Owner's Manual
for Vehicle

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

Contents
A to Z

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

M5 Owner's Manual for Vehicle

Congratulations, and thank you for choosing a BMW M5.

Thorough familiarity with your vehicle will provide you with enhanced control and security when you drive it. We therefore have this request:

Please take the time to read this Owner's Manual and familiarize yourself with the information that we have compiled for you before starting off in your new vehicle. It contains important data and instructions intended to assist you in gaining maximum use and satisfaction from your BMW M5's unique range of technical features. The manual also contains information on maintenance designed to enhance operating safety and contribute to maintaining the value of your BMW M5 throughout an extended service life.

This manual is supplemented by a Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or a Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

We wish you an enjoyable driving experience.

BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

BMW recommends Castrol

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

© 2007 Bayerische Motoren Werke
Aktiengesellschaft
Munich, Germany
Reprinting, including excerpts,
only with the written consent of
BMW AG, Munich.
f330Manuals2.com
Order No. 01 41 0 014 238
US English VIII/07, 07 09 500
Printed in Germany
Printed on environmentally friendly paper,
bleached without chlorine, suitable for recycling.

Contents

The fastest way to find specific topics is to use the index, refer to page 238.

CarManuals2.com

Using this Owner's Manual
4 Notes
7 Reporting safety defects

At a glance
10 Cockpit
16 iDrive
23 Voice command system

Controls
28 Opening and closing
41 Adjusting
53 Transporting children safely
56 Driving
66 Everything under control
78 Technology for comfort, convenience and safety
92 Lamps
97 Climate
104 Practical interior accessories

Driving tips
114 Things to remember when driving
119 BMW M5 Engineering

Navigation
122 Starting navigation system
124 Destination entry
136 Destination guidance
145 What to do if …

Entertainment
148 On/off and tone
152 Radio
159 Satellite radio
162 CD player and CD changer
168 AUX-In connection
169 USB/audio interface

Communications
174 Telephoning
189 BMW Assist

Mobility
198 Refueling
200 Wheels and tires
206 Under the hood
212 Maintenance
214 Replacing components
223 Giving and receiving assistance

Reference
230 Technical data
233 Short commands of voice command system
238 Everything from A to Z

Notes

Using this Owner's Manual

We have made every effort to ensure that you are able to find what you need in this Owner's Manual as quickly as possible. The fastest way to find specific topics is to refer to the detailed index at the back of the manual. If you wish to gain an initial overview of your vehicle, you will find this in the first chapter.

CarManuals2.com

Should you sell your BMW some day, please remember to hand over the Owner's Manual as well; it is an important component of your vehicle.

Additional sources of information

Should you have any other questions, your BMW center will be happy to advise you.

You can find information on BMW, e.g. on technology, on the Internet at www.bmwusa.com.

Symbols used

Indicates precautions that must be followed precisely in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury and serious damage to the vehicle.◀

Indicates information that will assist you in gaining the optimum benefit from your vehicle and enable you to care more effectively for your vehicle.◀

Refers to measures that can be taken to help protect the environment.◀

◀ Marks the end of a specific item of information.

* Indicates special equipment, country-specific equipment and optional extras, as well as equipment and functions not yet available at the time of printing.

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions.

›...‹ Verbal instructions to use with the voice command system.

››...‹‹ Identifies the answers generated by the voice command system.

Symbols on vehicle components

Indicates that you should consult the relevant section of this Owner's Manual for information on a particular part or assembly.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

The individual vehicle

When purchasing your BMW, you have decided in favor of a model with individualized equipment and features. This Owner's Manual describes all equipment and features offered for the BMW M5.

Please bear in mind that the manual may contain information on accessories and equipment that you have not specified for your own vehicle. Sections describing options and special equipment are marked by asterisks * to assist you in identifying possible differences between the descriptions in this manual and your own vehicle's equipment.

If equipment in your BMW is not described in this Owner's Manual, please refer to the accompanying Supplementary Owner's Manuals.

Editorial notice

BMW pursues a policy of continuous, ongoing development that is conceived to ensure that our vehicles continue to embody the highest quality and safety standards combined with advanced, state-of-the-art technology. For this reason, it is possible that the features described in this Owner's Manual could differ from those on your vehicle.

For your own safety

Maintenance and repairs

Advanced technology, e.g. the use of modern materials and high-performance electronics, requires specially adapted maintenance and repair methods. Therefore, have corresponding work on your BMW performed only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Parts and accessories

For your own safety, use genuine parts and accessories approved by BMW.
When you purchase accessories tested and approved by BMW and Genuine BMW Parts, you simultaneously acquire the assurance that they have been thoroughly tested by BMW to ensure optimum performance when installed on your vehicle.
BMW warrants these parts to be free from defects in material and workmanship.
BMW will not accept any liability for damage resulting from installation of parts and accessories not approved by BMW.
BMW cannot test every product made by other manufacturers to verify if it can be used on a BMW safely and without risk to either the vehicle, its operation or its occupants.
Genuine BMW Parts, BMW Accessories and other products approved by BMW, together with professional advice on using these items, are available from all BMW centers.
Installation and operation of non-BMW approved accessories such as alarms, radios, amplifiers, radar detectors, wheels, suspension components, brake dust shields, telephones, including operation of any mobile phone from within the vehicle without using an externally mounted antenna, or transceiver equipment such as CBs, walkie-talkies, ham radios or the like may cause extensive damage to the vehicle, compromise its safety, interfere with the vehicle's electrical system, or affect the validity of the BMW Limited Warranty. See your BMW center for additional information.◀

Maintenance, replacement, or repair of the emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive repair establishment or individual using any certified automotive part.◀

California Proposition 65 Warning

California law requires us to issue the following warning:

Engine exhaust and a wide variety of automobile components and parts, including components found in the interior furnishings in a vehicle, contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash your hands after handling.
Used engine oil contains chemicals that have caused cancer in laboratory animals. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Service and warranty

We recommend that you read this publication thoroughly.

Your BMW is covered by the following warranties:

CarManuals2.com

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- Rust Perforation Limited Warranty
- Federal Emissions System Defect Warranty
- Federal Emissions Performance Warranty
- California Emission Control System Limited Warranty

Detailed information about these warranties is listed in the Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models or in the Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models.

Reporting safety defects

For US customers

The following applies only to vehicles owned and operated in the US.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, NHTSA, in addition to notifying BMW of North America, LLC, P.O. Box 1227, Westwood, New Jersey 07675-1227, Telephone 1-800-831-1117.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or BMW of North America, LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov

For Canadian customers

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may call 1-800-333-0510 toll-free from anywhere in Canada or 1-613-993-9851 from the Ottawa region and from other countries, or contact Transport Canada by mail at: Transport Canada, ASFAD, Place de Ville, Tower C, 330 Sparks Street, Ottawa, ON, K1A 0N5. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.tc.gc.ca

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

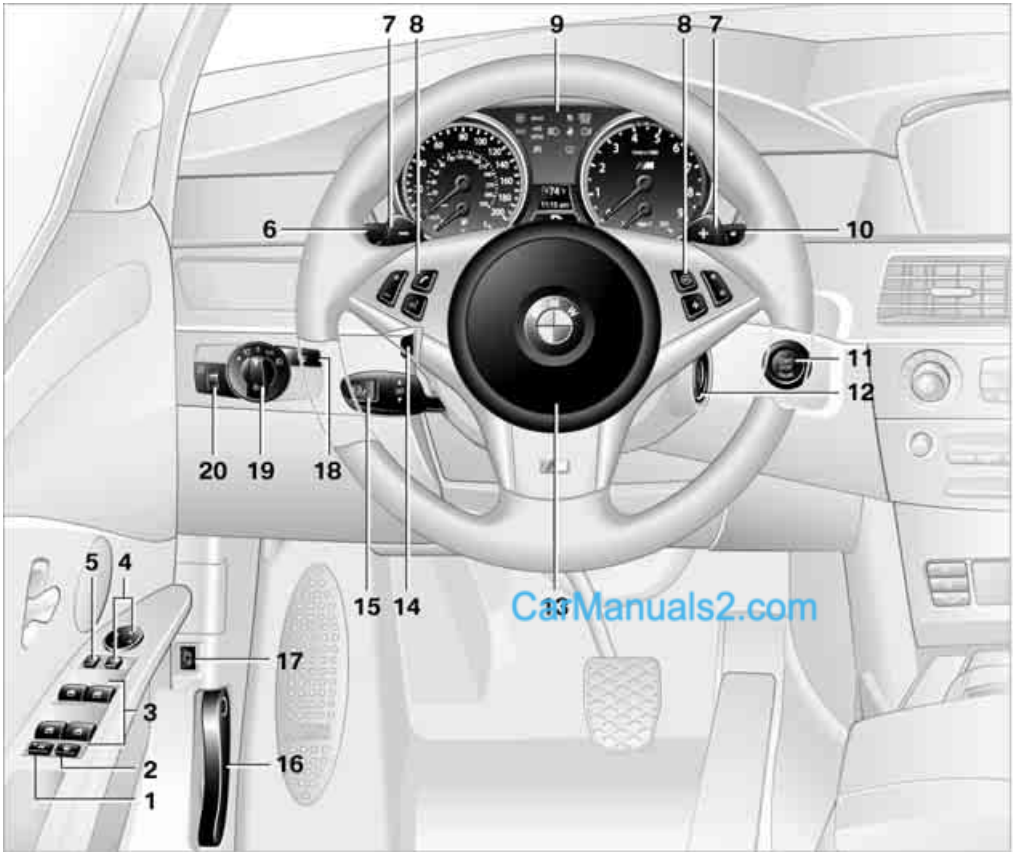
At a glance

This overview of buttons, switches and displays is intended to familiarize you with your vehicle's operating environment. The section will also assist you in becoming acquainted with the control concepts and options available for operating the various systems.

CarManuals2.com

Cockpit

Around the steering wheel: controls and displays



1 Rear window safety switch 38

2 Sun blind* for rear window 105

3 Opening and closing windows 37

4 Adjusting exterior mirrors 48
Automatic curb monitor* 48

5 Folding exterior mirrors in and out* 48

6
- Turn signals 62
- High beams, headlamp flasher 94
- High-beam assistant* 94
- Parking lamps* 94
- CHECK Check Control 71
- BC Computer 67

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

7 Shift paddles 61

8 Buttons on steering wheel

Mobile phone* 174:

- ▷ Press: accepting and ending call, starting dialing* for selected phone number and redialing if no phone number is selected
- ▷ Press and hold: redialing

Volume

Activating/deactivating voice command system* 23

Changing radio station 152
Selecting music track 163
Scrolling in phone book and in lists with stored phone numbers

MDrive, call up individual settings 50

Individually programmable 50

CarManuals2.com

9 Instrument cluster 12

10 Windshield wipers 63

Rain sensor 63

11 START STOP ENGINE Starting/stopping engine and Switching ignition on/off 56

12 Ignition lock 56

13 Horn, entire surface

14 Steering wheel heater* 49

Steering wheel adjustment 49

15 Cruise control 65

16 Releasing hood 206

17 Opening luggage compartment lid 33

18 Head-Up Display* 89

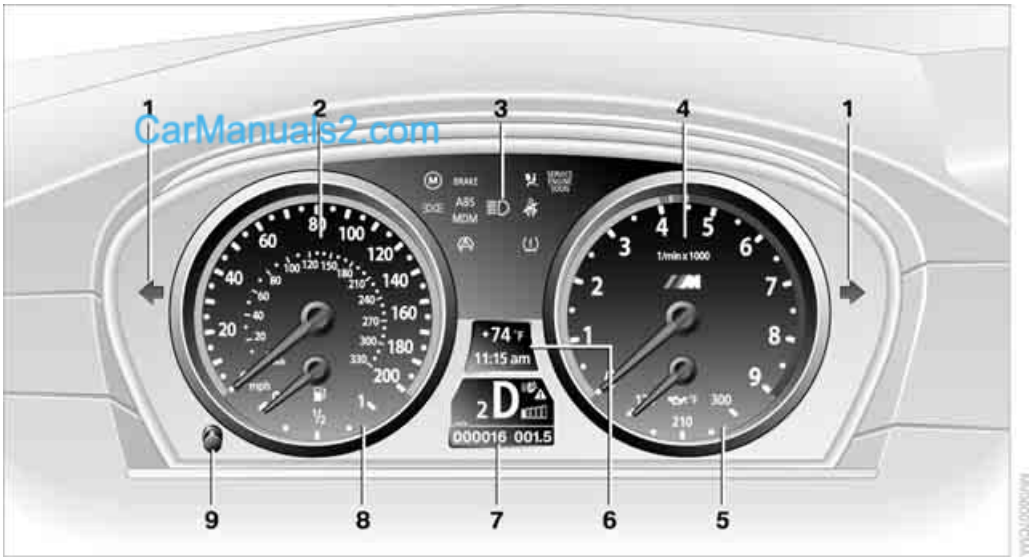
19 Parking lamps 92

Low beams 92
Daytime running lamps* 93
Automatic headlamp control 92
Daytime running lamps* 93
Adaptive Head Light* 94
High-beam assistant* 94

20 Instrument lighting 96

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Instrument cluster



1 Indicator lamps for turn signals

2 Speedometer

3 Indicator and warning lamps 13

4 Tachometer 66

5 Engine oil thermometer 67

6 Display for
- ▷ Computer 67
  Engine oil level 208
- ▷ Indicator and warning lamps 71
- ▷ Speed of cruise control 65

7 Display for
- ▷ Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic 59
- ▷ Engine oil level for manual transmission* 208
- ▷ ⚠ Check Control message present 71
- ▷ Odometer and trip odometer 66
- ▷ Date and remaining travel distance for service requirements 69
- ▷ High-beam assistant* 94

8 Fuel gauge 67

9 Resetting trip odometer 66

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Indicator and warning lamps

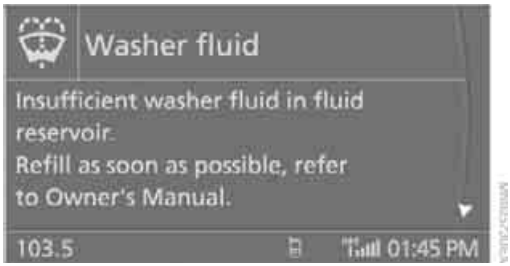
The concept

The indicator and warning lamps can light up in different combinations and colors.

Some lamps are tested for proper function by briefly lighting up during starting of the engine or when the ignition is switched on.

Explanatory text messages

Text messages at the bottom edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.



Additional information, e.g. on the cause of a malfunction and on the corresponding need to take action can be displayed via the Check Control, refer to page 71.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp comes on.

Indicator lamps without text messages

The following indicator lamps signal particular functions:

Parking lamps/low beams 92

High beams/headlamp flasher 94

Handbrake applied 58

Handbrake applied for Canadian models

Lamp flashes:
DSC controls the drive and braking forces for maintaining vehicle stability 80

MDrive 51

M Dynamic Mode 80

Engine malfunction with deteriorating emissions levels 213

Engine malfunction with deteriorating emissions levels for Canadian models 213

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Around the center console: controls and displays

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

1 Microphone for hands-free mode for telephone*
and for voice command system* 23

2 Reading lamps 96

3 SOS: initiating an emergency request 223

4 Glass sunroof*, electric 38

5 Interior lamps 96

6 Passenger airbag status lamp 88

7 Control Display 16

8 Hazard warning flashers

9 Central locking system 32

10 Automatic climate control 97

TEMP Temperature setting, left/right 98

AUTO Automatic air distribution and volume 98

Cooling function 100

AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode 100

MAX Maximum cooling 100

Air volume 99

Defrosting windows and removing condensation 99

Rear window defroster 97

11 Changing
- ▷ radio station 148
- ▷ track 148

12 Ejecting
- ▷ navigation DVD* 148
- ▷ audio CD 148

13 Drive for navigation system DVD with Professional* navigation system 122

14 Programmable memory/direct selection buttons 21

15 Drive for audio CDs 148

16 Switching Entertainment sound output on/off and adjusting volume 148

17 Heated seats 46

Active seat ventilation* 47

Adjusting active backrest width* 43

Flat Tire Monitor* 83

PDC Park Distance Control* 78

Opening luggage compartment lid* 33

18 Controller 16
Turn, press or move horizontally in four directions

19 Opening start menu on Control Display 17

20 Drivelogic of Sequential Manual Transmission 61

21 EDC Electronic Damper Control for Sequential Manual Transmission 82

22 DSC OFF Dynamic Stability Control for Sequential Manual Transmission 81

23 POWER M Engine Dynamic Control for Sequential Manual Transmission 59

24 EDC Electronic Damper Control for manual transmission* 82

25 MDM
- ▷ M Dynamic Mode for manual transmission 80
- ▷ Switching DSC on and off in manual transmission 81

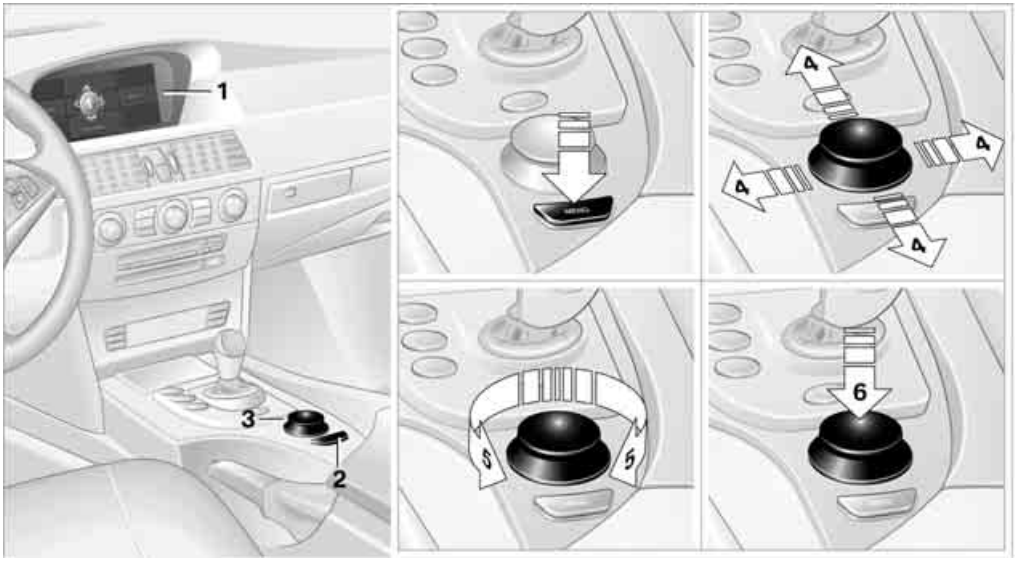
CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

iDrive

iDrive combines the functions of a large number of switches. This allows these functions to be operated from a central position. The following section provides an introduction to basic menu navigation. The control of the individual functions is described in connection with the relevant equipment.

Controls



1 Control Display

2 **MENU** button
Opening start menu

3 Controller
With the controller you can select menu items and make settings:

- ▷ move in four directions, arrows **4**
- ▷ turn, arrow **5**
- ▷ press, arrow **6**

⚠ To avoid posing an unnecessary hazard due to inattention, both to your own vehicle's occupants and to other road users: never attempt to use the controls to make entries unless traffic and road conditions allow.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Menu overview

Communication

- ▷ Telephone*
- ▷ BMW Assist* or TeleService*

Navigation or onboard information

- ▷ Navigation system*
- ▷ Onboard information, e.g. for displaying the average fuel consumption

Entertainment

- ▷ Radio
- ▷ CD player and CD changer*
- ▷ AUX-In connection
- ▷ USB/audio interface*

Climate

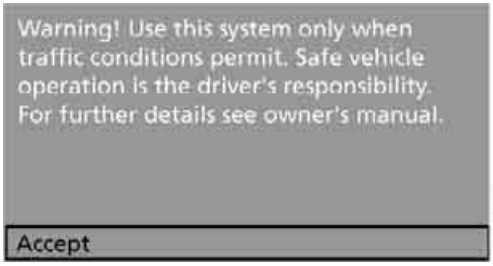
- ▷ Vent settings
- ▷ Automatic programs
- ▷ Seat heater distribution*
- ▷ Parked car operation

i menu

- ▷ Switching off Control Display
- ▷ Tone and display settings
- ▷ Settings for your vehicle, e.g. for MDrive, or for the central locking system
- ▷ Display of maintenance intervals and deadlines for legally mandated inspections
- ▷ Settings for telephone

Operating principle

From radio readiness, refer to page 56, the following message is shown on the Control Display:



To hide the message:
Press the controller.
This displays the start menu.

The message is automatically hidden after approx. 10 seconds.

Start menu

You can call up all the functions of iDrive using five menu items.

Opening start menu

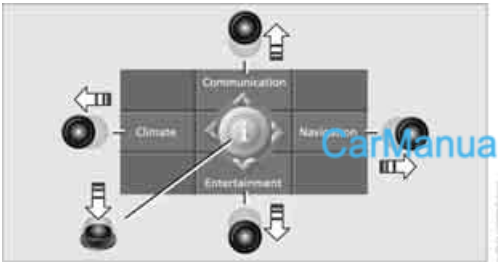
Press the **MENU** button.

To open the start menu from the i menu:

Press the **MENU** button twice.

CarManuals2.com

Opening menu items of start menu



With the start menu you can open the menu items Communication, Navigation, Entertainment and Climate by moving the controller to the left, right, front or rear.

You can open the i menu by pressing the controller.

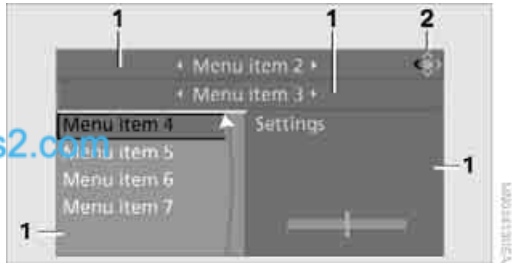
Comfort opening of menu items

Comfort opening offers you:

- ▷ Opening of a menu item of the start menu in the last display shown
- ▷ Direct changing between Communication, Navigation, Entertainment and Climate without pressing the **MENU** button

To do so, move the controller in the corresponding direction and hold it for approx. 2 seconds.

Displays in menu



1 Each menu is divided into fields.
The respective active field is highlighted.

2 A symbol indicates the last selected menu item of the start menu:

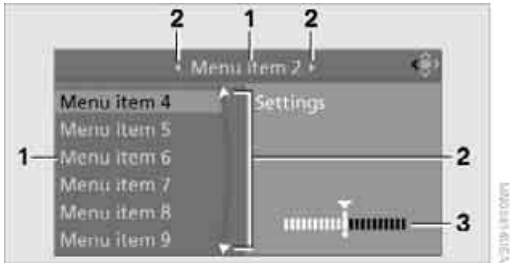
Communication

Navigation or onboard information

Entertainment

Climate

i menu



1 Menu items are usually grouped in horizontal or vertical lists.

2 In these lists, arrows indicate the possibility of accessing other menu items that are not currently visible.

3 Settings are displayed graphically or numerically.

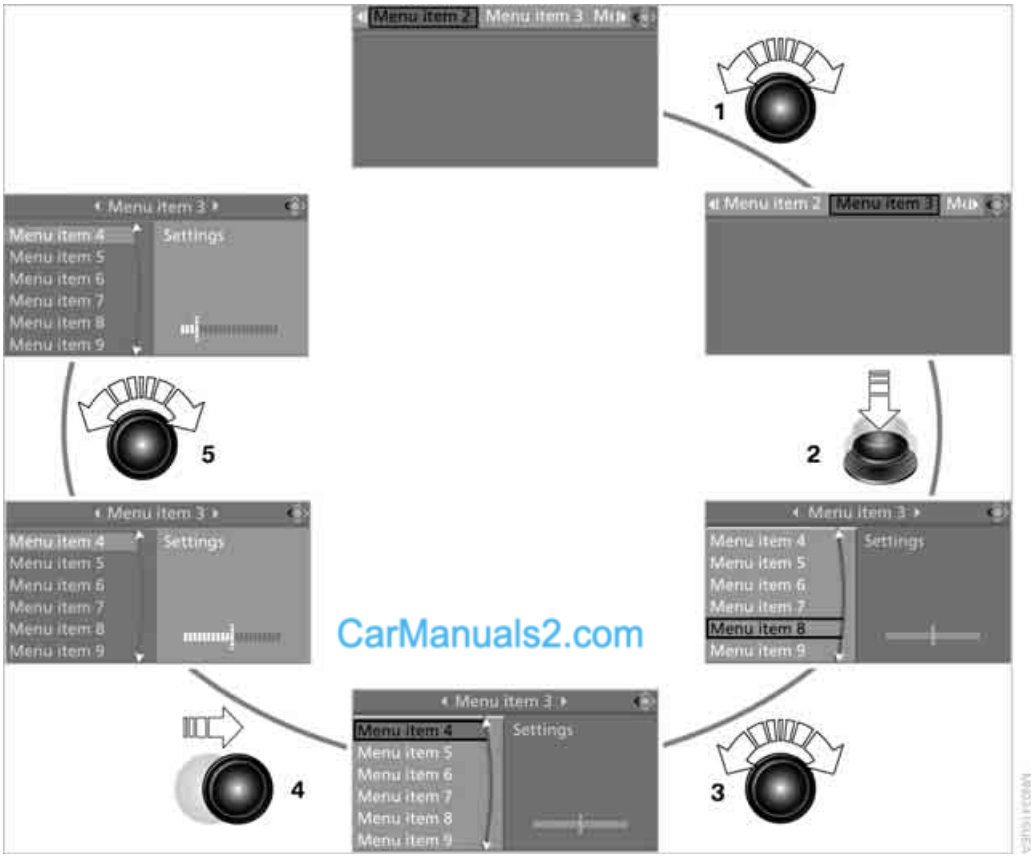
CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Operating principle at a glance

Basic operation via iDrive is described in this view.

You can view the individual steps under Settings on Control Display, Setting time, refer to page 75.



1 Selecting menu item:
- ▷ Turn the controller; the highlight moves
- ▷ Menu items shown in white can be selected by highlighting

2 Activating menu item:
- ▷ Press the controller
- ▷ New menu items are displayed or the function is carried out

3 Selecting menu item: refer to **1**

4 Changing between fields:
- ▷ Briefly move the controller left, right, forward or back
- ▷ Release controller
- ▷ Active field appears lighter

5 Adjusting settings:
- ▷ Turn controller
- ▷ Graphic display, numerical value or text displays can be changed
- ▷ Confirmation by changing field

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Status information

1 Display for:
   - ▷ Entertainment:
     Radio, CD
   - ▷ Telephone* in "Communication":
     Name of linked mobile phone, network search or no network
   - ▷ "BMW Assist"*:
     Existing voice connection with a service from BMW Assist

2 Entertainment sound output off

3 Station that transmits traffic information is received*:

   "TI":
   Reception of traffic information for the navigation system is possible and activated

4 Display for:
   - ▷ New entries present in "Missed calls"*
   - ▷ ▲ Roaming active

5 Telephoning* is possible if the mobile phone is paired in the vehicle
   Reception strength of mobile phone network, dependent on mobile phone

6 Time

Other displays:
The status information is temporarily hidden when there are Check Control instructions or inputs via the voice command system*.

Assistance window*

Additional information appears in the assistance window:

- ▷ The computer or the trip computer
- ▷ The arrow or map view with a navigation system*
- ▷ The current position

Selecting display

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.

2. Select a menu item.
3. Press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Switching assistance window off/on

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.
2. Select "Assist. window off" and press the controller.

To switch on, change to the assistance window and press the controller.

Switching Control Display off/on

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Display off" and press the controller.

To switch on, press the controller.

Programmable memory/ direct selection buttons

You can save and run certain functions of iDrive on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons:

- ▷ Destinations of navigation
- ▷ Telephone, phone numbers
- ▷ Entertainment:
  - ▷ radio station
  - ▷ CD
  - ▷ CD compartment of CD changer*
  - ▷ AUX

The assignment of the programmable memory/ direct selection buttons is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Saving function

Destinations of navigation

1. Select navigation destination, e.g. in the destination list or the address book.
2. Press the 1 ... 6 button longer than 2 seconds.

Special features:

- ▷ With the destination guidance system and the map view started, the current destination is stored.
- ▷ During destination entry via a map, the coordinates at the cursor are stored, not the current destination.

Telephone, phone numbers

1. Enter the phone number or select it in a list of the stored phone numbers, e.g. of the A-Z list.
2. Press the 1 ... 6 button longer than 2 seconds.

If a name is assigned to the phone number, the name will also be stored.

CarManuals2.com

Entertainment

In the Entertainment menu, the sound source currently heard, e.g. a radio station, is stored, regardless of the selection on the Control Display.

1. Select the desired function, e.g. radio station or CD.
2. Press the 1 ... 6 button longer than 2 seconds.

If the vehicle is equipped with two drives, the current track is stored for CDs with compressed audio files.◀

Run function

Press the 1 ... 6 button.

When selecting a phone number, the connection is also established, or the destination guidance is started when a navigation destination is selected.

Displaying button assignment

You can display the assignment of the buttons by touching them with your finger. Please do not wear gloves when doing so. Touching with an object, e.g. a pen, does not function.

Displaying short info

Touch the 1 ... 6 button.

The assignment of the buttons is displayed.

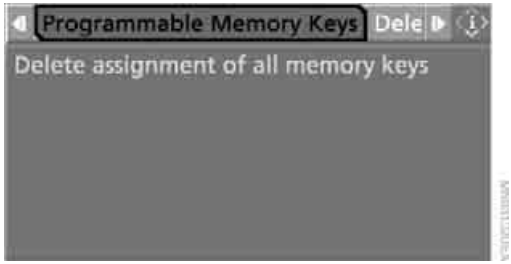
- Destination of navigation system
- Entertainment source
- Telephone, phone number
- Not assigned

Displaying detailed information

Touch the 1 ... 6 button longer.

Deleting button assignments

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Select "Programmable Memory Keys" and press the controller.



6. Select "Delete assignment of all memory keys" and press the controller.
7. Acknowledge with "Yes".

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Voice command system*

The concept

The voice command system allows you to control operation of various vehicle systems without taking your hands off the steering wheel.

Individual menu items on the Control Display can be spoken as commands. This frees you of having to use the controller.

The voice command system transforms your oral commands into control signals for the selected systems and provides support in the form of instructions or questions.

The voice command system uses a special microphone located in the area of the interior rearview mirror, refer to page 14.

Precondition

Via iDrive, set the language that applies for the voice command system in order to enable identification of the spoken commands. To set the language of iDrive, refer to page 77.

Symbols in Owner's Manual

›...‹ Say the specified commands word for word.
››...‹‹ Indicates responses of the voice command system.

Voice commands

Activating voice command system

1. Press the button.

This symbol on the Control Display and an acoustic signal tell you that the voice command system can respond to commands.

2. Say the command.
   The command is displayed on the Control Display.

This symbol is shown on the Control Display when you can input additional commands.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

If no other commands are possible, then operate the equipment via iDrive.

Terminating or canceling voice command system

Press the button on the steering wheel or

›Cancel‹

Commands

Having possible commands read aloud

You can have the system read aloud the possible commands related to the selected menu item on the Control Display.
To have the system list the possible commands:

›Options‹

For example, if you have selected "CD", the system will read aloud the possible commands for operating the CD player and the CD changer*.

Opening help

›Help‹

CarManuals2.com

Using alternative commands

There are often a number of commands to run a function, e.g.:

›Radio on‹ or ›Turn radio on‹

Running functions directly with short commands

With short commands you can run certain functions directly, regardless of which menu item is selected, refer to page 233.

Opening start menu

›Main menu‹

Example: selecting a track

1. Switch on Entertainment sound output if necessary.
2. Press the button on the steering wheel.
3. ›Entertainment‹
   The system says:
   ››Entertainment‹‹

4. ›CD‹
   The system says:
   ››CD on‹‹

5. Press the button on the steering wheel.
6. Select track, e.g.:
   ›Track 1‹
   The system says:
   ››Track 1‹‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

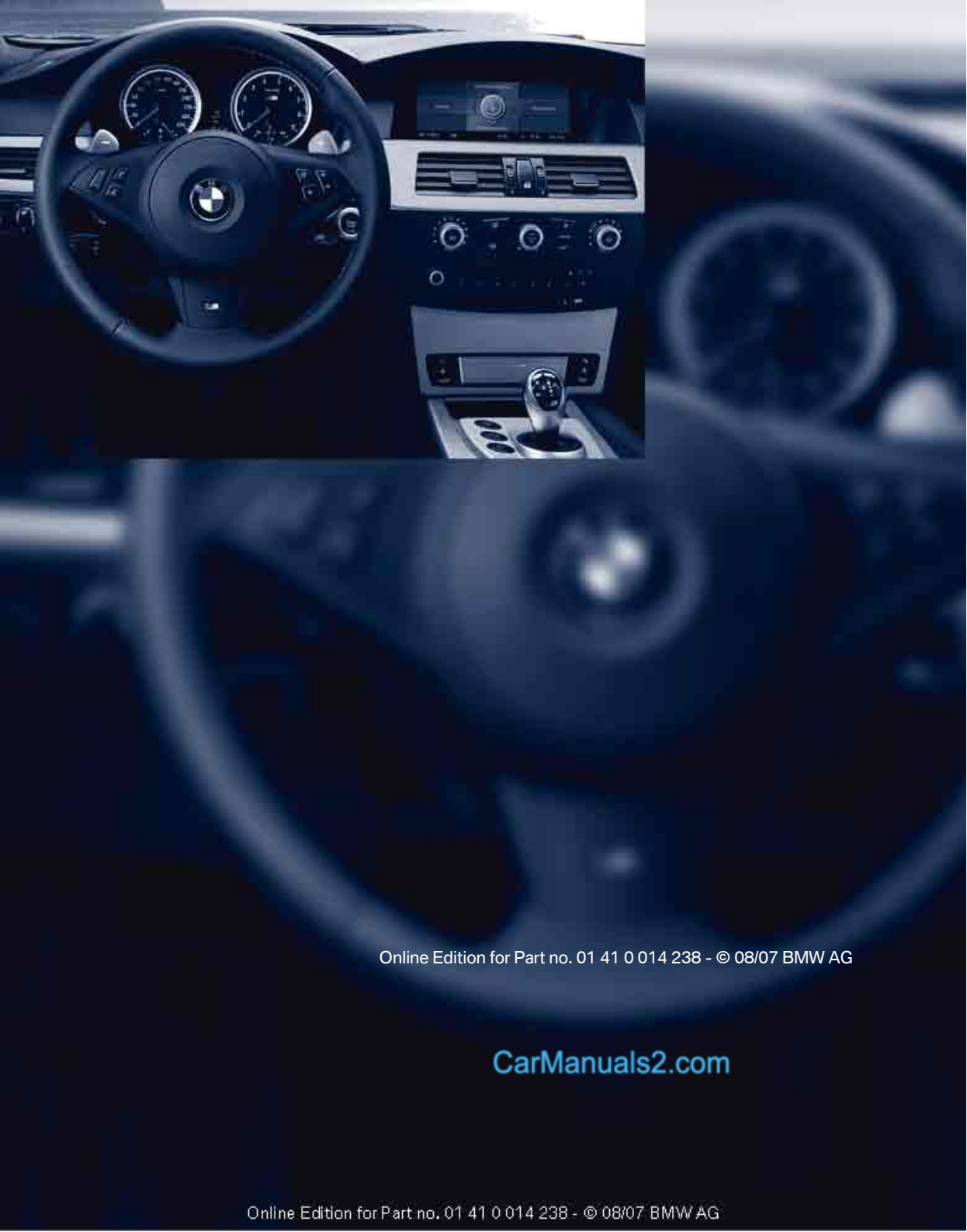
Notes

The mobile phone can also be operated with voice commands, refer to page 185.◀

For voice commands, bear the following in mind:

- Say the commands and numbers smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses. This also applies to spelling when entering the destination.
- Always issue commands in the language of the voice command system.
- When selecting a radio station, use the common pronunciation of the station name.
- For entries in the voice-activated phone book, only use names in the language of the voice command system and do not use abbreviations.
- Keep the doors, windows and glass sun-roof* closed to prevent interference from ambient noise.
- Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

CarManuals2.com



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Controls

This chapter is intended to provide you with information for complete control of your vehicle. Its extensive array of features and accessories, both for driving and for your own safety, comfort and convenience, are described here.

CarManuals2.com

Opening and closing

Keys/remote control

1 Remote control with integrated key
2 Spare key
3 Adapter for spare key, in glove compartment

Remote control with integrated key

Each remote control contains a battery which is charged in the ignition lock while driving. Drive a longer distance with each remote control at least twice a year to keep the battery charged. For comfort access*, the remote control contains a replaceable battery, refer to page 37.

Depending on which remote control is detected by the vehicle during unlocking, different settings are activated and executed in the vehicle, refer to Personal Profile, page 28.

Information on the required for maintenance is also stored in the remote control, refer to Service data in remote control, page 212.

Integrated key

Press button **1** to unlock the key.

The integrated key fits the following locks:

- ▷ Glove compartment, refer to page 106
- ▷ Driver's door, refer to page 32

New remote controls

To obtain additional or replace lost keys, new remote controls with an integrated key are available at your BMW center.

Spare key

Store the spare key in a safe place such as your wallet. This key is not intended for regular use.

The spare key and integrated key fit the same locks.

Adapter for spare key

The adapter is required so that the vehicle can be started with the spare key or radio readiness can be switched on.

Remove the adapter from the holder in the glove compartment and slide the spare key into the adapter before use.

Personal Profile

The concept

You can set a number of functions of your BMW individually according to your preferences. Personal Profile ensures that most of these settings are stored for the remote control currently in use without you having to do anything. When the vehicle is unlocked, the corresponding

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

remote control is detected and the settings stored for it are called up and carried out.

This means that you will always find your BMW set to your own personal settings even if another person with his/her own remote control and settings has used the vehicle since the last time you drove it. The individual settings are stored for a maximum of four remote controls.

CarManuals2.com

Personal Profile settings

Details on the settings are provided on the specified pages.

- Behavior of the central locking system when unlocking vehicle, refer to page 30
- Automatic locking of the vehicle, refer to page 32
- Programming button on steering wheel, refer to page 50
- Displays on Control Display:
  - Brightness of the Control Display, refer to page 76
  - Measuring units for consumption, route/distances, temperature, and pressure, refer to page 76
  - 12h/24h clock format, refer to page 75
  - Date format, refer to page 76
  - Language on Control Display, refer to page 77
- Lighting settings:
  - Triple turn signal activation, refer to page 63
  - Welcome lamps, refer to page 92
  - Pathway lighting, refer to page 93
  - Daytime running lamps*, refer to page 93
  - High-beam assistant*, refer to page 94
- Individual settings for MDrive, refer to page 50
- Drivelogic driving program in the Sequential mode, refer to page 61
- PDC Park Distance Control*: optical warning, refer to page 79
- Head-Up Display*: selection and brightness of display, refer to page 89
- Automatic climate control: AUTO program and intensity, cooling function, and automatic recirculated air control/recirculated air mode, temperature, air distribution, temperature in the upper body region, refer to text starting on page 98
- Navigation system*: voice instructions for destination guidance, refer to page 122

In addition, the following, most recently selected settings are recalled during unlocking:

- Programmable memory/direct selection buttons: selecting stored functions, refer to page 21
- Positions of driver's seat, outside mirrors, and steering wheel*, refer to page 43
- Audio sources: volume and tone settings, refer to page 149
- Radio:
  - Display of stored stations, refer to page 152
  - Switching RDS Radio Data System on/off*, refer to page 155
- Phone: volume setting, refer to pages 180, 186

Central locking system

The concept

The central locking system is ready for operation whenever the driver's door is closed.

The system simultaneously engages and releases the locks on the following:

- Doors
- Luggage compartment lid
- Fuel filler door

Operating from outside

- via the remote control
- via the door lock
- with comfort access* via the door handles

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

At the same time, the anti-theft system is also operated. It prevents the doors from being unlocked using the lock buttons or door handles. In addition, it the remote control is used, the welcome lamps, the interior lamps and the courtesy lamps* are switched on or off. The alarm system is armed/disarmed at the same time.
You can find more detailed information on the alarm system on page 35.

Operating from inside

Via the button for central locking, refer to page 32. The fuel filler door is not locked.

In the event of a sufficiently severe accident, the central locking system unlocks automatically. In addition, the hazard warning flashers and interior lamps come on.

Opening and closing: Using remote control

Persons or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take along the remote control when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.◀

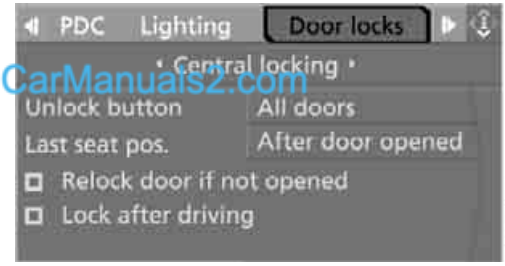
Unlocking

Press the button.
The interior lamps, the courtesy lamps* of the doors and the welcome lamps are switched on.

You can set how the vehicle is unlocked. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

6. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.
7. Select "Unlock button" and press the controller.
8. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "All doors"
     Pressing the button once unlocks the entire vehicle.
   - ▷ "Driver's door only"
     Pressing the button once unlocks the driver's door and the fuel filler door. Pressing the button twice unlocks the entire vehicle.

9. Press the controller.

Comfort opening

Press and hold the button. The windows and the glass sunroof* open.

Locking

Press the LOCK button.

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if persons are inside, as unlocking from the

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

inside is not possible without special knowledge.◀

Switching on interior lamps

With vehicle locked:
Press the LOCK button.
You can also use this function to locate your vehicle in parking garages etc.

Panic mode*

You can trigger the alarm system in case of danger:

Press the button for at least 3 seconds.

Switching off alarm: press any button.

Opening luggage compartment lid

Press the button for approx. 1 second.

The luggage compartment lid opens, regardless of whether it was previously locked or unlocked.

▷ During opening, the luggage compartment lid pivots back and up. Make sure that adequate clearance is available before opening.
To prevent accidentally locking yourself out, never lay the remote control in the cargo bay. A previously locked luggage compartment lid is also locked again after closing.◀

Confirmation signals

You can activate or deactivate the confirmation signals.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Confirmation" and press the controller.

7. Select the desired signal.
8. Press the controller.
   The signal is activated.

Malfunction

The remote control may malfunction due to local radio waves. Should the remote control fail to operate due to interference of this kind, unlock and lock the vehicle via the door lock using a key.

If it is no longer possible to lock the vehicle using the remote control, then the battery is discharged. Use this remote control during an extended drive; this will recharge the battery, refer to page 28.

For US owners only

The transmitter and receiver units comply with part 15 of the FCC/Federal Communication Commission regulations. Operation is governed by the following:

FCC ID:
LX8766S
LX8766E
LX8CAS
LX8CAS2

Compliance statement:
This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

▷ This device must not cause harmful interference, and

▷ this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

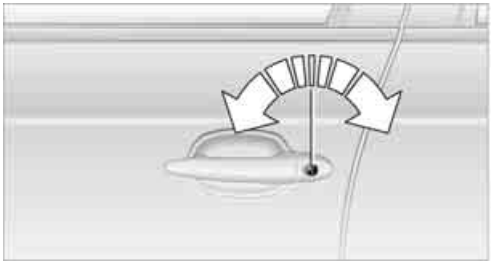
CarManuals2.com

Any unauthorized modifications or changes to these devices could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.◀

Using door lock

Do not lock the vehicle from the outside if persons are inside, as unlocking from the inside is not possible without special knowledge.◀

CarManuals2.com



When unlocking

1. Turning the key once unlocks the driver's door and the fuel filler door.
2. Turning the key a second time unlocks the remaining doors and the luggage compartment lid.

Convenient operation

You also have the option of operating the windows and the glass sunroof* from the driver's door lock.

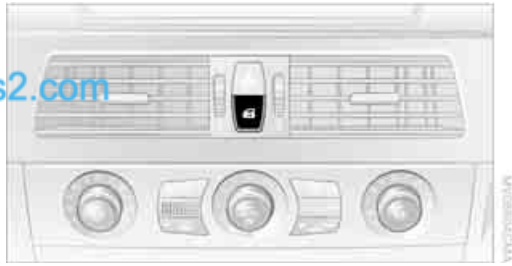
Turn and hold the key in the positions for unlocking or locking.

Watch during the closing process to be sure that no one is injured. Releasing the key stops the operation.◀

Manual operation

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can turn a key all the way to the right or left in the door lock to lock or unlock the driver's door.

Opening and closing: from inside



When the front doors are closed, this button unlocks or locks the doors and luggage compartment lid, but does not activate the anti-theft system. The fuel filler door remains unlocked.

Automatic locking

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.

7. Select a menu item:
   ▷ "Relock door if not opened"
   The central locking system locks again after a short time if no door has been opened.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

▷ "Lock after driving"
The central locking system locks the vehicle as soon as you start to drive.

8. Press the controller.
The setting is selected.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Unlocking and opening

▷ Either unlock the doors together with the button for the central locking system and then pull the door handle above the armrest or

▷ pull on the door handle of each door twice: the first time unlocks the door, the second time opens it.

Locking

▷ Use the central locking button to lock all of the doors simultaneously, or

▷ press down the lock button of a door.
To prevent you from being locked out, the open driver's door cannot be locked using the lock button.

⚠ Persons or animals left unattended in a parked vehicle can lock the doors from the inside. Always take along the remote control when leaving the vehicle so that the vehicle can then be opened from the outside.◀

Doors

Automatic soft closing*

To close the doors, merely push them gently. The closing process will then be carried out automatically.

⚠ Make sure that the closing path of the doors is clear; otherwise injuries may result.◀

Luggage compartment lid

During opening, the luggage compartment lid pivots back and up. Make sure that adequate clearance is available before opening.◀

Opening from inside

Press button **1** or button **2***: the luggage compartment lid opens.

Opening from outside

Press the button on the luggage compartment lid or the button on the remote control for approx. 1 second: the luggage compartment lid opens.

Closing

Make sure that the closing path of the luggage compartment lid is clear, otherwise injuries may result.◀

CarManuals2.com

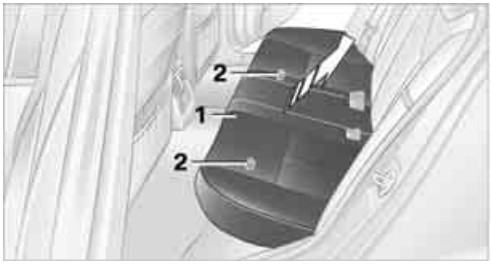
The handle recesses on the interior trim of the luggage compartment lid make it easier to pull down.

Emergency release

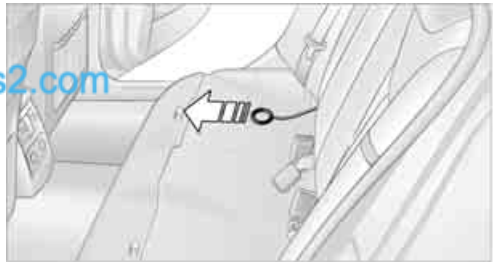
Pull the lever in the cargo bay. The luggage compartment lid is unlocked.

Manual release

If an electrical malfunction should occur, you can unlock the luggage compartment lid manually.



1. Grasp the rear seat **1** at the front edge and remove from the mounts **2**. Take out the rear seat.



2. Pull the ring. The luggage compartment lid is unlocked and opens.

   Only grasp the emergency release by the ring, otherwise injuries can occur.◀

Reinstalling rear seat:

1. Position the rear seat in the vehicle. Guide the two outer belt buckles **3** through the seat bench and slide the seat bench completely under the backrest. The center belt buckle **4** must be guided between the seat bench and the backrest when doing so.

   Do not twist the center belt buckle, otherwise correct operation of this safety equipment is not ensured.◀

2. Press the rear seat downward into the mounts at the front until it audibly engages.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Alarm system

The concept

The vehicle alarm system responds:

- When a door, the hood, or the luggage compartment lid are opened
- To movements in the vehicle: interior motion sensor, refer to page 35
- To changes in the vehicle's tilt if someone attempts to steal the wheels or tow the vehicle
- To interruptions in battery voltage

Unauthorized operations are briefly signaled by the alarm system:

- with an acoustic alarm
- by switching on the hazard warning flashers
- by flashing the high beams

Arming and disarming alarm system

When you lock or unlock the vehicle, either with the remote control or at the door lock, the alarm system is armed or disarmed at the same time.

The luggage compartment lid can also be opened with the system armed with the button on the remote control, refer to page 33. When the luggage compartment lid is closed, it is locked and monitored again.

Switching off alarm

- Unlock the vehicle using the remote control, refer to page 30.
- Insert the remote control all the way into the ignition lock.

Indicator lamp displays

- The indicator lamp under the interior rear-view mirror flashes continuously: the system is armed.
- The indicator lamp flashes after locking: doors, hood or luggage compartment lid are not properly closed. Even if you do not close the alerted area, the system begins to monitor the remaining areas, and the indicator lamp flashes continuously after approx. 10 seconds. However, the interior motion sensor is not activated.
- The indicator lamp goes out after unlocking: your vehicle has not been disturbed while you were away.
- The indicator lamp flashes after unlocking until the remote control is inserted into the ignition lock, however for a maximum of approx. 5 minutes: your vehicle has been disturbed while you were away.

Tilt alarm sensor

The tilt of the vehicle is monitored. The alarm system reacts, e.g. in case of an attempted wheel theft or towing.

Interior motion sensor

In order for the interior motion sensor to function properly, the windows and glass sunroof* must be completely closed.

CarManuals2.com

Avoiding unintentional alarms

The tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor may be switched off at the same time. This prevents unintentional alarms, e.g. in the following situations:

- In two-level garages
- When transporting on car-carrying trains, by sea or on a trailer
- When animals are to remain in the vehicle

Switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor

Press the LOCK button on the remote control again as soon as the vehicle is locked.

The indicator lamp lights up briefly and then flashes continuously. The tilt alarm sensor and the interior motion sensor are switched off until the next time the vehicle is unlocked and subsequently locked again.

Comfort access*

Comfort access allows you to access your vehicle without having to hold the remote control in your hand. It is sufficient to carry the remote control with you, e.g. in your jacket pocket. The vehicle automatically detects the associated remote control in the immediate vicinity or in the interior.

Comfort access supports the following functions:

- Unlocking/locking vehicle
- Comfort closing
- Opening luggage compartment lid separately
- Starting engine

Functional requirement

- The vehicle or the luggage compartment lid can only be locked if the vehicle detects that the remote control you are carrying is outside the vehicle.
- The next unlocking and locking cycle is not possible until after approx. 2 seconds.
- The engine can only be started if the vehicle detects that the remote control is located in the vehicle.

Comparison with ordinary remote control

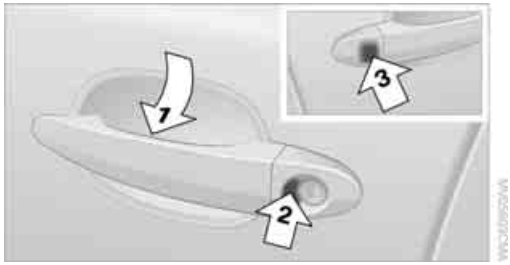
CarManuals2.com

You can control the functions mentioned previously with the comfort access or by pressing the buttons on the remote control. Therefore, please familiarize yourself with the information on opening and closing beginning on page 28 beforehand.

The special features when using comfort access are described in the following.

▷ Should a short delay occur when opening or closing the windows or the glass sunroof, the system is checking whether a remote control is located in the vehicle. Please repeat opening or closing if necessary.◀

Unlocking



Grasp a door handle fully, refer to arrow **1**, but do not touch the surfaces, arrow **2** or **3** when doing so. This corresponds to pressing the button.

Locking

- On the driver's door, touch the highlighted surface, arrow **2**, with a finger for approx. 1 second, but do not grasp the door handle.
- On the remaining doors, touch the highlighted surface, arrow **3**, with the back of your hand for approx. 1 second, but do not grasp the door handle.

This corresponds to pressing the LOCK button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Please make sure that the ignition and all electronic systems/consumers are switched off before locking to save the battery.◀

Comfort closing

Hold a finger or the back of your hand against the surface, arrow **2** or **3**, but do not grasp the door handle while doing so.

The windows and the glass sunroof* are closed.

Watch during the closing process to be sure that no one is injured. Removing the hand from the door handle stops the closing process immediately.◀

Opening luggage compartment lid separately

Press the button on the luggage compartment lid. This corresponds to pressing the button.

If the vehicle detects that a remote control has been accidentally left inside the locked vehicle's cargo bay after the luggage compartment lid is closed, the lid will reopen. The hazard warning flashers flash and a signal* sounds.◀

Switching on radio readiness

By pressing the Start/Stop button, you switch on the radio readiness, refer to page 56.

When doing so, do not depress the brake or clutch pedal, otherwise the engine will start immediately.◀

Starting engine

You can start the engine or switch on the ignition if a remote control is located in the interior of the vehicle. It need not be inserted in the ignition lock, refer to page 56.

If you take the remote control with you when leaving the vehicle with the engine running, a warning lamp lights up. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display. As long as no remote control is detected, it is only possible to restart the engine within approx. 10 seconds after it is switched off.

Malfunction

The comfort access function may malfunction due to local radio waves. Then open or close the vehicle with the buttons on the remote control or with a key. To start the engine following this, insert the remote control in the ignition lock.

When unlocking or locking/comfort closing do not simultaneously grasp the door handle and touch the surfaces, arrow **2** or **3**. Otherwise, you may limit the function.

Replacing battery

If the battery of the remote control is dead, a message will appear in the Control Display.

1. Remove integrated key from remote control, refer to page 28.
2. Remove cover.

3. Lay in new battery with positive side facing upward.
4. Press cover closed.

Return used battery to a recycling collection point or to your BMW center.◀

Windows

To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the windows and keep them in your field of vision until they are shut.
Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, operate the windows and injure themselves.◀

Opening, closing

▷ Press switch to resistance point:
The window continues to open as long as you keep the switch pressed.

▷ Press switch beyond resistance point:
The window opens automatically. Pressing the switch again stops the opening movement.

You can close the windows in the same manner by pulling the switch.

Separate switches for the rear windows are located in the rear.

For information on using the convenient operation at the door lock or with the remote control, refer to page 30 or 32.

CarManuals2.com

For information on comfort closing with comfort access, refer to page 37.

After switching off ignition

You can still operate the windows with the remote control removed or the ignition switched off for approx. 1 minute, as long as neither of the front doors has been opened.

Pinch protection system

If the closing force exceeds a specific value as a window closes, the closing action is interrupted and the window reopens slightly.

⚠ Despite the pinch protection system, inspect the window's travel path prior to closing it, as the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as thin objects, and the window would continue closing.
Do not install any accessories in the range of movement of the windows, otherwise the pinch protection system will be impaired.◀

Closing without pinch protection system

In case of danger from outside or if, for example, ice on the window prevents normal closing, proceed as follows:

1. Pull the switch beyond the resistance point and hold. The pinch protection system is limited and the window opens slightly if the closing force exceeds a certain value.
2. Pull the switch beyond the resistance point and hold again within approx. 4 seconds. The window closes without the pinch protection system.

Safety switch

With the safety switch, you can prevent the rear windows from being opened or closed via the switches in the rear passenger area, by children, for example. The LED lights up when this safety feature is activated.

⚠ Always press the safety switch when children ride in the rear, otherwise uncontrolled closing of the windows could lead to injuries.◀

Glass sunroof*, electric

The glass sunroof is ready for operation with the ignition switched on, refer to page 56.

⚠ To prevent injuries, exercise care when closing the glass sunroof and keep it in your field of vision until it is closed.
Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, operate the roof and injure themselves.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Raising

Press the switch.
The closed glass sunroof is raised and the sliding visor opens slightly.

Do not use force to close the sliding visor with the glass sunroof in its raised position, otherwise the mechanism will be damaged.◀

Opening, closing

▷ Slide the switch back to the resistance point.
The glass sunroof and the sliding visor open together for as long as you hold the switch in this position.

▷ Briefly press the switch back beyond the resistance point.
The glass sunroof and the sliding visor open automatically. Briefly pressing the switch stops the motion.

In a similar manner, the glass sunroof closes when you slide the switch forward. The sliding visor remains open and can be closed by hand.

For information on using the convenient operation at the door lock or with the remote control, refer to page 30 or 32.

For information on comfort closing with comfort access, refer to page 37.

Opening and closing automatically

Briefly press the switch beyond the resistance point.

The following movements are also automatic:

▷ Press the switch with the sunroof open: the sunroof is raised all the way.

▷ When the sunroof is raised, briefly press the switch in the opening direction: the sunroof is opened all the way.

Briefly pressing the switch stops the motion.

Pinch protection system

If the glass sunroof encounters resistance when closing from roughly the center of the roof opening or when closing from the raised position, the closing action is interrupted and the glass sunroof reopens a short way.

Despite the pinch protection system, inspect the sunroof's travel path prior to closing it, as the safety system might fail to detect certain kinds of obstructions, such as very thin objects, and the sunroof would continue closing.◀

Closing without pinch protection system

In case of danger from outside, slide the switch forward beyond the resistance point and hold. The roof closes without the pinch protection system.

Following interruptions in electrical power supply

After a power loss, the sunroof may only respond to the raise command. Then have the system initialized. BMW recommends having this work done by your BMW center.

CarManuals2.com

Moving manually*

In the event of an electrical malfunction, you can move the glass sunroof manually.

1. Fold the cover panel down, if necessary using a screwdriver from the onboard tool kit, refer to page 214.

CarManuals2.com

2. Insert the Allen wrench supplied with the onboard tool kit, refer to page 214, into the opening provided. Move the glass sunroof in the desired direction. The arrow below indicates the rotation direction for closing.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Adjusting

Sitting safely

The ideal sitting position can make a vital contribution to relaxed, fatigue-free driving. In the interaction with the safety belts, the head restraints and the airbags, the sitting position plays an important role in an accident. To ensure that the safety systems operate with optimal efficiency, we strongly urge you to observe the instructions contained in the following section.

For additional information on transporting children safely, refer to page 53.

Airbags

Always maintain an adequate distance between yourself and the airbags. Always hold the steering wheel by its rim with hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions, to minimize the risk of injuries to your hands and arms in the event of airbag deployment.
No one and nothing is to come between the airbags and the seat occupant.
Do not use the cover of the front airbag on the front passenger side as a storage area. Make sure that the front passenger is sitting correctly and does not rest feet or legs on the instrument panel, otherwise leg injuries can occur if the front airbags are triggered.
Make sure that occupants do not rest their head on the side or head airbags, otherwise injuries can occur if the airbags are triggered.◀

CarManuals2.com

Even if you adhere to all the instructions, injuries resulting from contact with airbags cannot be fully excluded, depending on the circumstances. The ignition and inflation noise may provoke a mild hearing loss in extremely sensitive individuals. This effect is usually only temporary.

For airbag locations and additional information on airbags, refer to page 87.

Head restraints

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of spinal injury in the event of an accident.

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approx. at ear level. Otherwise there is increased danger of injury in the event of an accident.◀

Head restraints, refer to page 44.

Safety belts

Before every drive, make sure that safety belts are being worn at all of the occupied seats. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Your vehicle is provided with five seats, which are all equipped with a safety belt.

Never allow more than one person to wear a single safety belt. Never allow infants or small children to ride in a passenger's lap. Make sure that the belt lies low around the hips in the lap area and does not press on the abdomen. The safety belt must not lie across the neck, rub against sharp edges, be routed over solid or breakable objects or be pinched. Wear the safety belt without twisting, snugly across the lap and shoulders, as close to the body as possible. Otherwise the belt can slip over the hips in the lap area in a frontal impact and injure the abdomen. Avoid wearing clothing that prevents the belt from fitting properly and pull the belt in the upper body area periodically to readjust the tension, in order to avoid a reduction in the restraint of the safety belt.◀

Safety belts, refer to page 45.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Seats

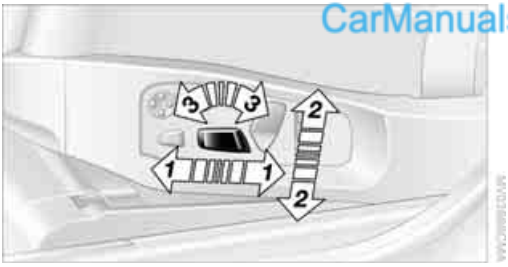
Note before adjusting

Never attempt to adjust your seat while the vehicle is moving. The seat could respond with unexpected movement, and the ensuing loss of vehicle control could lead to an accident.
Also on the passenger side, do not incline the backrest too far to the rear while the vehicle is being driven, otherwise there is a danger in the event of an accident of sliding under the safety belt, eliminating the protection normally provided by the belt.◀

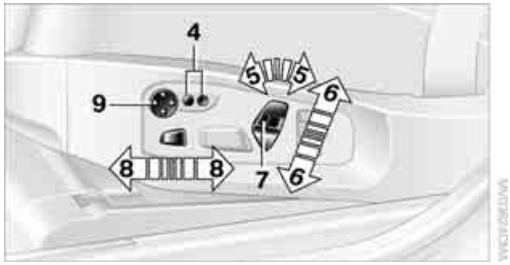
Please follow the instructions on damage to safety belts provided on page 46 and the information on the active front head restraints on page 44.

Adjusting seat

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 41.◀



1 Longitudinal direction
2 Height
3 Angle



4 Backrest width
5 Backrest
6 Head restraint height
7 Shoulder support*
8 Thigh support
9 Lumbar support*

Shoulder support*

This also supports the back in the shoulder area, This provides a relaxed driving position and helps relieve stress on the shoulder muscles.

Lumbar support*

CarManuals2.com

You can also adjust the contour of the backrest to obtain additional support in the lumbar region.

The upper hips and spinal column receive supplementary support to help you maintain a relaxed, upright sitting position.

▷ Increase or decrease curvature: press front or rear section of switch.

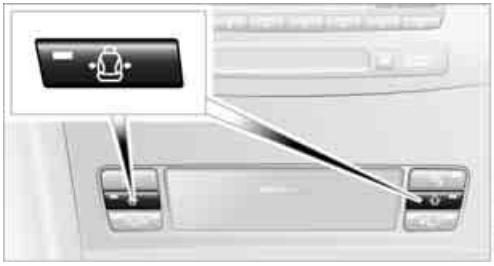
▷ Shift curvature up or down: press upper or lowers section of switch.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

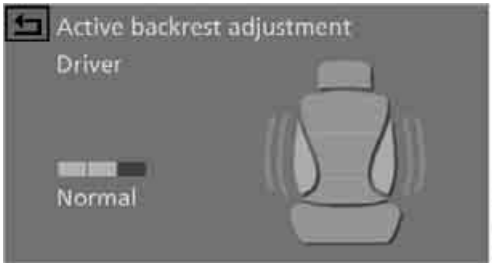
Adjusting active backrest width*

First set a comfortable backrest width, see above. Based on the backrest width set, the lateral support is automatically adapted to the current driving situation.

The adaptation of the backrest width and the speed of the adjustment vary depending on the program. You can select from among three programs from comfort to sport. The "Sport" program provides increased lateral support on both sides when driving through a quick succession of curves.



Press the button repeatedly until the desired program is shown on the Control Display. The LED in the button lights up.



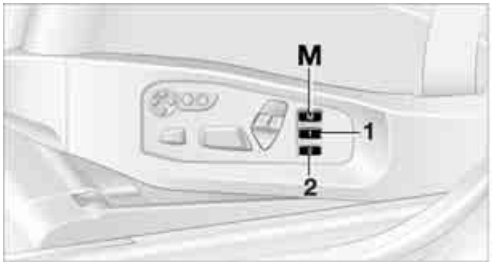
To deactivate: press button longer.

You can also activate your preferred program for the active backrest width adjustment of the driver's seat with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 50.

Easy entry/exit*

To facilitate entry and exit, the backrest width temporarily opens all the way.

Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory



You can store and request two different positions for the driver's seat and passenger seat*, exterior rearview mirrors, and steering wheel.

The adjustment of the lumbar support is not stored in the memory.

Storing

1. Switch on radio readiness or ignition, refer to page 56.
2. Set the desired seat, exterior mirror and steering wheel positions.
3. Press the M button:
   The LED in the button lights up.
4. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2**:
   The LED goes out.

CarManuals2.com

Requesting

Do not request a position from the memory while the vehicle is moving. There is a risk of accident from unexpected movement of the seat or steering wheel.◀

Comfort mode

1. Open the driver's door after unlocking or switch on radio readiness.
2. Briefly press the desired memory button **1** or **2**.

The system cancels the adjustment procedure when you briefly press one of the seat adjustment switches or one of the memory buttons.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Safety feature

1. Close the driver's door and switch the ignition on or off.
2. Press the desired memory button **1** or **2** and maintain pressure until the adjustment process has been completed.

If the M button was pressed inadvertently: press the button again; the LED goes out.

Requesting with remote control

The last positions of the driver's seat, the exterior rearview mirrors, and steering wheel are stored for the remote control currently in use.

You can choose when the position is requested:

▷ Request when unlocking vehicle

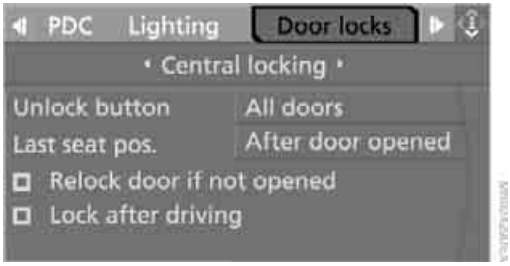
▷ Request when opening driver's door

When using this feature, always make sure that the footwell behind the driver's seat is empty and unobstructed. Failure to do so could cause injury to persons or damage to objects behind the seat as a result of a rearward movement of the seat.◀

The system cancels the adjustment procedure when you briefly press one of the seat adjustment switches or one of the memory buttons.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Door locks" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "Central locking" and press the controller.
7. Select "Last seat pos." and press the controller.
8. Select "After unlocking" or "After door opened".

9. Press the controller.

To cancel the request:
Select "Deactivated" and press the controller.

Head restraints

A correctly adjusted head restraint reduces the risk of spinal injury in the event of an accident.

CarManuals2.com

Adjust the head restraint so that its center is approx. at ear level. Otherwise there is increased danger of injury in the event of an accident. Only remove the head restraints if no one will be sitting on the seat in question. Reinstall the head restraints before transporting passengers, as otherwise the head restraint cannot provide its protective function.◀

Active front head restraints

In the event of a rear-end collision of sufficient severity, the active head restraint reduces the distance to the head.

Do not use seat covers or head restraint covers that could impede the proper functioning of the active head restraint. Otherwise, there is no assurance that the active head restraint will perform its protective function and it is not possible to take advantage of its injury-reducing potential in the event of a rear-end collision.

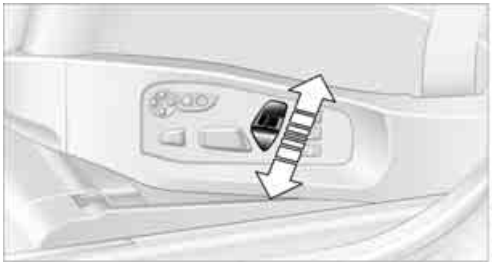
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Have the active head restraints reset after they are triggered in a rear-end collision. Only have this work carried out by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Otherwise, this safety equipment will not function properly.◀

CarManuals2.com

▷ Please contact a BMW center if you wish to have the front head restraints removed and installed.◀

Front seats: height adjustment



Front seats: adjusting distance to the back of the head

▷ Forward: pull up.

▷ Back: push the button and slide the headrest cushion toward the rear.

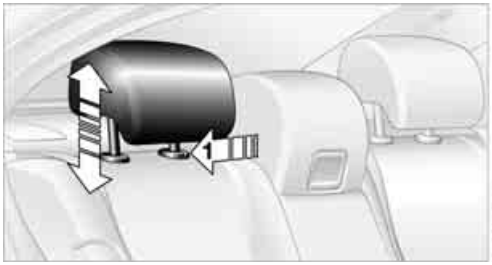
⚠ Do not place any objects behind the headrest cushion. Otherwise, you can impair the proper function of the head restraint.◀

On seats with a shoulder support* you adjust the distance to the back of the head with the shoulder support, refer to page 42.

Adjusting side extensions*

You can fold the side extensions on the head restraint forward for increased lateral support in the resting position.

Rear seats: height adjustment



▷ To raise: pull up.

▷ To lower: press the button, arrow **1**, and push the head restraint downward.

Removing

1. Pull the head restraint upward to the stop.
2. Press the button, arrow **1**, and pull the head restraint all the way out.

Safety belts

⚠ To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 41.◀

Before every drive, make sure that safety belts are being worn at all of the occupied seats. Airbags complement the safety belt as an additional safety device, but they do not represent a substitute.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Fastening

Make sure you hear the latch plate engage in the belt buckle.

Safety belt reminder for driver's seat and passenger seat*

The indicator lamp lights up and a signal sounds. A message also appears on the Control Display. Please check whether the safety belt is correctly positioned.

The safety belt reminder is operative at speeds above approx. 5 mph/8 km/h. It can also be activated if objects are placed on the passenger seat.

Releasing

1. Grasp the belt firmly.
2. Press the red button in the buckle.
3. Guide the belt into its reel.

The shoulder strap's anchorage point will be correct for adult seat occupants of every build if the seat is correctly adjusted, refer to page 42.

The two rear safety belt buckles integrated into the rear seat are for passengers sitting on the left and right. The belt buckle embossed with the word CENTER is intended exclusively for use by passengers riding in the center position.

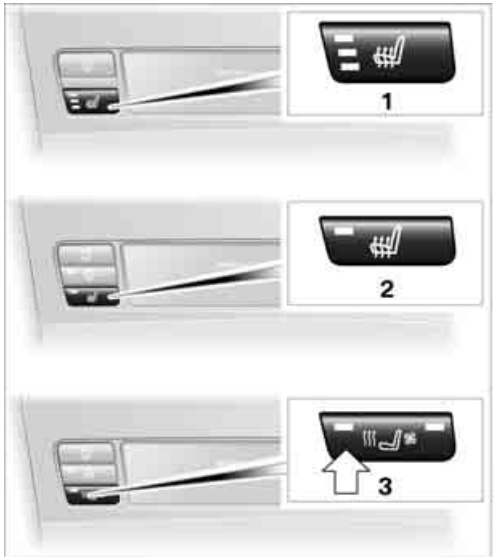
Damage to safety belts

When subjected to strain due to an accident or in the event of damage, replace the safety belts, the belt tensioners, and any child restraint systems and have the belt anchor points checked. Only have this work carried out at a BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Otherwise correct operation of this safety equipment is not guaranteed.◀

Seat heating

Front

The appearance and arrangement of the buttons may vary depending on the equipment.



1 Seat heating, three LEDs

2 Seat heating, one LED

3 Seat heating with active seat ventilation*

CarManuals2.com

Press the respective button once per temperature level. The temperature level is shown on the Control Display with buttons **2** and **3**.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

The maximum temperature is supplied when three LEDs are lit.

The temperature is reduced and if need be, the heating is switched off in order to reduce the load on the battery. The LEDs remain lit.

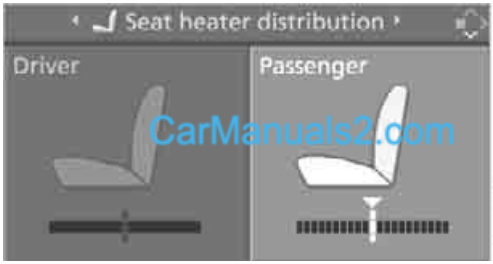
To switch off: press button longer.

Temperature distribution without active seat ventilation

The heat output can be distributed variously in the seat cushion and the backrest.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Seat heater distribution" and press the controller.
4. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Driver" or "Passenger".



5. Turn the controller to adjust the distribution.
   The setting is applied.

Temperature distribution with active seat ventilation

The heat output can be distributed variously in the seat cushion and the backrest.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Driver's seat climate" or "Passenger's seat climate" and press the controller.

Turn the controller to adjust the distribution.
The setting is applied.

Rear

Operation similar to front seat heating; two temperature levels, without temperature distribution.

Active seat ventilation*

The appearance and arrangement of the buttons may vary depending on the equipment.

1 Active seat ventilation

2 Active seat ventilation with seat heating

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Press the respective button once per ventilation level. The ventilation level appears on the Control Display. The maximum level is supplied when three LEDs are lit.

The air quantity is reduced and if need be, the ventilation is switched off in order to reduce the load on the battery. The LEDs remain lit.

To switch off: press button longer.

The highest level is used for rapid cooling, e.g. when the vehicle has become heated up.◀

Mirrors

Exterior mirrors

The mirror on the passenger's side is more curved than the driver's mirror. Objects reflected in the mirror are closer than they appear. Do not estimate the distance of following traffic based on what you see in the mirrors, otherwise there is an increased accident risk.◀

1 Adjusting

2 Switching to the other mirror or to the automatic curb monitor

3 Folding mirrors in and out*

Storing the mirror positions, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory on page 43.

Adjusting manually

You can also adjust the mirrors manually by pressing against the outer edges of their mirror glass.

Folding mirrors in and out*

Pressing button **3** allows you to fold mirrors in and out up to a speed of approx. 20 mph/ 30 km/h. This is advantageous, for example, in car washes, narrow streets or for bringing mirrors that have been manually folded in back into the correct position. Mirrors that were folded in are folded out automatically at a speed of approx. 25 mph/40 km/h.

Before going through a car wash, fold the mirrors in manually, or with button **3**, otherwise they could be damaged, depending on the width of the car wash system.◀

Automatic heating

Below a certain outdoor temperature, both exterior mirrors are heated whenever the engine is running or the ignition is switched on.

Tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror – automatic curb monitor

Activating

1. Slide switch into the driver's side mirror position, arrow **1**.

CarManuals2.com

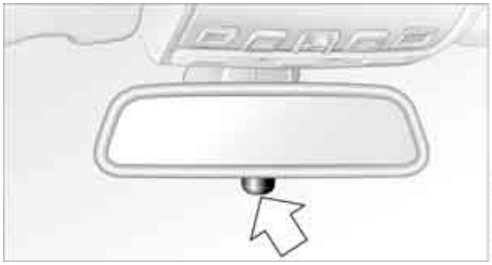
2. Shift into reverse or move selector lever into position R.
   The mirror glass tilts downward somewhat on the passenger's side. This allows the driver to see the area immediately adjacent to the vehicle – such as a curb – when parking, etc.

Deactivating

Slide switch into the passenger side mirror position, arrow **2**.

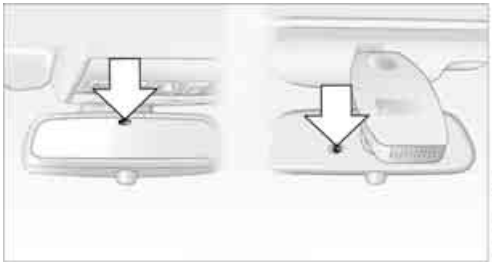
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Interior rearview mirror



To reduce the dazzle effect of following vehicles at night, turn the knob.

Interior and exterior mirrors, automatic dimming feature*



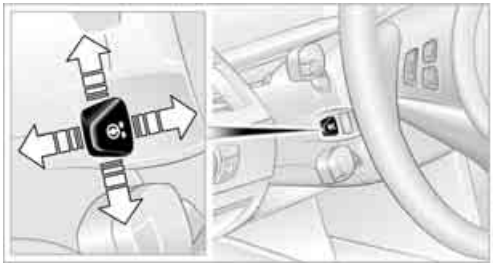
This feature is controlled by two photocells in the interior rearview mirror. One is integrated into the glass of the mirror, while the other is located at an offset position on the rear of the mirror housing.

For trouble-free operation, keep the photocells clean and do not cover the area between the interior rearview mirror and the windshield. Do not attach stickers of any kind to the windshield in front of the mirror, either.

Steering wheel

Adjusting

Do not adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving. There is a risk of accident as the result of unexpected movement.◀



The steering wheel can be adjusted in four directions.

Storing steering wheel positions, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory on page 43.

Easy entry/exit*

To facilitate entry and exit, the steering wheel temporarily moves into the uppermost position.

CarManuals2.com

Steering wheel heating*

Press the button.

When the steering wheel heater is operating, the LED in the button lights up.

Programmable button on steering wheel

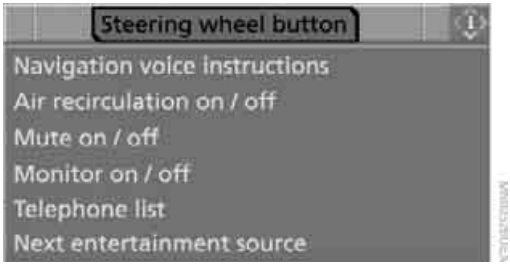
You can program the button individually.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Steering wheel button" and press the controller.



A list of different functions appears:

- ▷ "Navigation voice instructions"
  Voice instructions for the navigation system*
- ▷ "Air recirculation on / off"
  Permanently shutting off outside air, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control on page 100
- ▷ "Mute on / off"
  Mutes the audio sources
- ▷ "Monitor on / off"
  Switches the Control Display on/off
- ▷ "Telephone list"*
  Display/hide phone book or last list of stored phone numbers
- ▷ "Next entertainment source"
  Changes audio source

5. Select the desired function and press the controller.

Operating function

Press the button on the steering wheel.

If you have programmed "Navigation voice instructions" for the button:

- ▷ To switch voice instructions on/off:
  Press button longer.
- ▷ To repeat the last voice instruction:
  Press the button.

CarManuals2.com

MDrive

With MDrive you can configure several individual settings for your vehicle on the Control Display and activate them with the button on the steering wheel.

Configuring settings

With the ignition switched on you can set MDrive on the Control Display.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.

2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "MDrive" and press the controller.

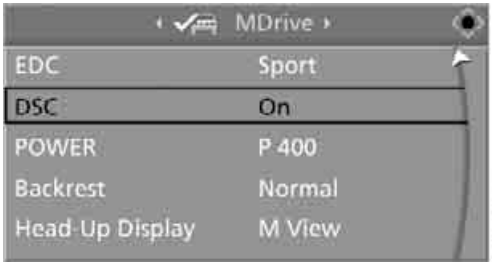
The functions contained in MDrive are displayed:

- ▷ "SMG Drivelogic"
  Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic: shifting modes and Drivelogic driving programs, refer to page 61
- ▷ "EDC"
  Programs of the Electronic Damping Control, refer to page 82
- ▷ "DSC"
  Dynamic Stability Control and M Dynamic Mode, refer to page 80
- ▷ "POWER"
  Programs of the M Engine Dynamic Control, refer to page 59
- ▷ "Backrest"*
  Programs of the active backrest width adjustment, refer to page 43
- ▷ "Head-Up Display"*
  Views of the Head-Up Display, refer to page 89

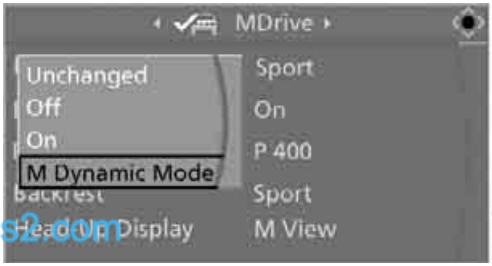
You can reset all settings for MDrive to the default values:

- ▷ "Reset to default"

4. Select the desired function.



5. Press the controller.
6. Turn the controller to select the desired setting.



"Unchanged" retains the current setting made outside of MDrive.

7. Press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Activating settings

Press the button on the steering wheel.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up. The settings made on the Control Display for the functions contained in MDrive are active.

Pressing the button again deactivates MDrive.

If the indicator lamp flashes after pressing the button, MDrive was unable to react, as the ABS Antilock Brake System or DSC Dynamic Stability Control is currently controlling the vehicle stability. Press the button

CarManuals2.com

again when the indicator lamp no longer flashes.◀

Even with MDrive activated, you can change individual settings outside MDrive, e.g. with the buttons in the center console. To reactivate all settings made for MDrive on the Control Display: press the button twice.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Transporting children safely

The right place for children

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle, otherwise they could endanger themselves and other persons, e.g. by opening the doors.◀

Children always in the rear

Accident research shows that the safest place for children is on the rear seat.

Children younger than 13 years of age or with a height under 5 ft/150 cm may only be transported in the rear in child restraint systems which correspond to the age, weight and height of the child. Otherwise there is an increased danger of injury in an accident.◀

Children 13 years of age or older must wear a safety belt as soon as a suitable child restraint system can no longer be used due to their age, size and weight.

Exception for front passenger seat

Should it ever be necessary to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, the front and side airbags on the passenger side must first be deactivated. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury for the child if the airbags are triggered, even with a child restraint system.◀

For more information on automatic deactivation of the front passenger airbags, refer to page 88.

Installing child restraint systems

Observe the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for selection, installation and use of the child restraint systems. Otherwise the degree of protection may be reduced.◀

CarManuals2.com

Backrest width on front passenger seat

Open the backrest width setting of the front passenger seat all the way. After mounting the child's seat, deactivate the active backrest width adjustment and do not call up any memory position. Otherwise this limits the stability of the child's seat on the front passenger seat.◀

1. After unlocking the vehicle, sit on the front passenger seat and close the door to call up the memory position.
2. Completely open the backrest width adjustment, refer to page 42.
3. Deactivate active backrest width adjustment, refer to page 43.
4. Install child's seat.

Child seat security

All rear safety belts and the safety belt for the front passenger can be locked against pulling out to secure child restraint systems.

Locking safety belt

1. Secure the child restraint system with the belt.
2. Pull out the belt webbing completely.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in and pull taut against the child restraint system. The safety belt is locked.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Unlocking safety belt

1. Open the belt buckle.
2. Remove the child restraint system.
3. Allow the belt webbing to be pulled in completely.

CarManuals2.com

LATCH child restraint fixing system

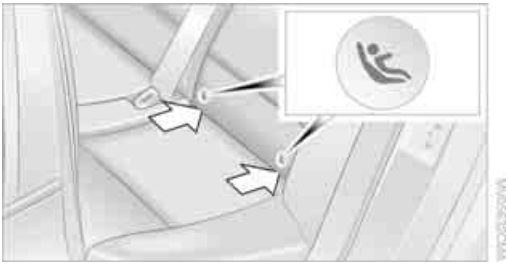
LATCH: Lower Anchor and Tethers for CHildren.

Follow the system manufacturer's instructions on installation and use of LATCH child restraint systems in order not to impair their protective function.◀

Before attaching the LATCH child's seat, pull the belt away from the region of the child restraint fixing system.

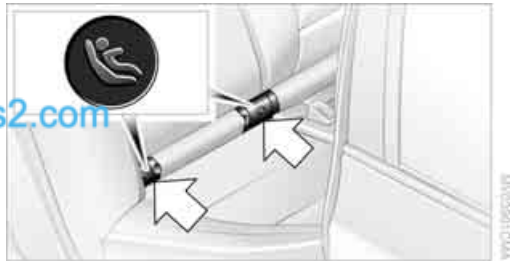
Make sure that the LATCH mounts have properly clicked into place and that the child restraint system is resting snugly against the backrest. Otherwise, the protective action may be impeded.◀

Rear seats



The anchor points for the LATCH anchors are located at the positions indicated by arrows in the gap between the seat and the backrest.

Rear seats with through-loading system*



The anchor points for the LATCH anchors are located behind the indicated protective caps. Remove the cover caps before mounting the child's seat.

Child restraint system with tether strap

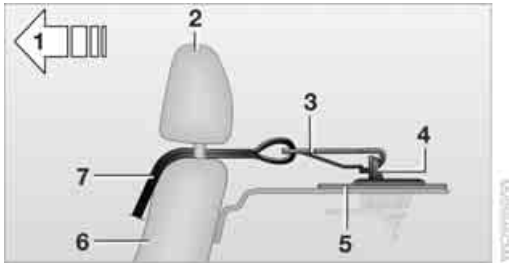
Only use the tether-strap mounting points to secure child restraint systems, otherwise the mounting points could be damaged.◀

There are three additional mounting points for child restraint systems with a tether strap, refer to arrows. Fold the corresponding mounting point upward before using.

Placement of tether strap

Make sure that the upper retaining strap is not routed over sharp edges and does not twist on its way to the upper mounting point; otherwise, the belt may not properly secure the child restraint system in the event of an accident.◀

Outer rear seat



1 Direction of travel

2 Head restraints

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

3 Hook of upper retaining strap
4 Mounting point
5 Rear window shelf
6 Backrest
7 Upper retaining strap of child restraint system

Fold upward or remove covers before using the mounting points.

1. Slide the head restraint upward.
2. Thread the upper retaining strap between the head restraint supports.
3. Attach the retaining strap hook to the mounting point.
4. Slide the head restraint into the bottom position.
5. Pull the retaining strap taut.

Center rear seat

1. Fold the center armrest somewhat toward the front.
2. Guide retaining strap through the opening.

3. Fold back the center armrest.
4. Attach the retaining strap hook to the mounting point.
5. Pull the retaining strap taut.

On trips

If the vehicle is equipped with rear side airbags, make sure that children do not lean out of the child's seat towards the door panels. Otherwise injuries can be caused if the side airbags are triggered.◀

Child-safety locks for rear doors

Slide down the safety lever on the rear doors: the door can now be opened from the outside only.

Safety switch for power windows

Always press the safety switch for the power windows, refer to page 38, when children are riding in the rear of the vehicle.

CarManuals2.com

Driving

Ignition lock

Inserting remote control into ignition lock

Insert the remote control as far as possible into the ignition lock.

Radio readiness switches on.
Some electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation.

Comfort access*

With comfort access, only insert the remote control into the ignition lock in exceptional cases, refer to page 36.

Removing remote control from ignition lock

Do not pull the remote control out of the ignition lock using force, as otherwise damage may result.◀

Before removing the remote control, first press it in as far as possible to release the locking device.

The ignition is switched off if it was still switched on.

Start/Stop button

CarManuals2.com

Pressing the Start/Stop button switches the radio readiness or the ignition on and off.

Manual transmission: the engine starts when you depress the brake pedal while pressing the Start/Stop button.
Sequential Manual Transmission: when you press the Start/Stop button with the brake depressed and the selector lever in position P or N, the engine starts.◀

Radio readiness

Some electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation. The last information of the computer selected is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Radio readiness is switched off:

- when the remote control is removed from the ignition lock
- with comfort access* by touching the surface on the door handle, refer to Locking on page 36

Ignition on

All electronic systems/consumers are ready for operation. The odometer and the trip odometer are displayed in the instrument cluster, refer to page 66.

Please switch off the ignition and the electronic systems/consumers which are not required when the engine is not running to save the battery.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Radio readiness and ignition switched off

All indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster go out.

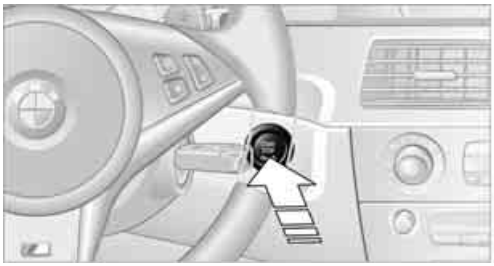
Starting engine

CarManuals2.com

Do not run the engine in closed rooms, otherwise the inhalation of toxic exhaust gases can cause unconsciousness and death. The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, an odorless and colorless, but highly toxic gas. Never leave an unattended vehicle with the engine running, as such a vehicle represents a potential safety hazard.
Before leaving the vehicle with the engine running, shift into neutral* or move the selector lever into position N and firmly apply the handbrake, otherwise the vehicle can begin to roll.◀

Avoid frequent starting in quick succession or repeated starting attempts in which the engine does not start. Otherwise, the fuel is not burned or inadequately burned and there is a danger of overheating and damaging the catalytic converter.◀

Do not allow the engine to warm up by leaving it running while the vehicle remains stationary. Instead, begin to drive at a moderate engine speed.



Manual transmission*

Remote control in ignition lock or with comfort access in vehicle, refer to page 36.

1. Depress brake pedal.
2. Depress the clutch pedal and shift into idling position.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic

Remote control in ignition lock or with comfort access in vehicle, refer to page 36.

1. Firmly apply the handbrake.
2. Depress brake pedal.
3. Place selector lever in position N.
4. Press the Start/Stop button.

If the engine does not start, shift back to the last selector lever position selected, refer to the instrument cluster display or the selector lever. Then select position N.
You cannot start off with the hood open.
When the engine is cold, the exhaust system has a slightly metallic undertone due to the system design.◀

Switching off engine

When leaving the vehicle, always take the remote control with you.
When parking, firmly apply the handbrake, as otherwise the vehicle could roll.◀

Manual transmission*

1. Press the Start/Stop button with the vehicle stopped.
2. Shift into first gear or reverse.
3. Firmly apply the handbrake.
4. Remove the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 56.

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic

1. Firmly apply the handbrake.
2. Shift into a driving position.
3. Press the Start/Stop button.
   If N is engaged when switching off the engine, this will be pointed out to you optically and acoustically.
4. Remove the remote control from the ignition lock, refer to page 56.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Handbrake

The handbrake is primarily intended to prevent the vehicle from rolling while parked; it brakes the rear wheels.

Indicator lamp

CarManuals2.com

The indicator lamp lights up, and a signal also sounds when starting off. The handbrake is applied.

Indicator lamp for Canadian models.

Applying

The lever locks in position automatically.

Releasing

Pull slightly upwards, press the button and lower the lever.

If exceptional circumstances should make it necessary to apply the handbrake while the vehicle is in motion, do not pull it too firmly. In doing so, continuously press the button of the handbrake lever. Otherwise, too firm an application of the handbrake can lock up the rear wheels and cause the rear of the car to swerve.◀

To prevent corrosion and one-sided braking action, occasionally apply the handbrake lightly when the vehicle is slowly coming to a stop if the traffic conditions are suitable. The brake lamps do not light up when the handbrake is applied.◀

Manual transmission*

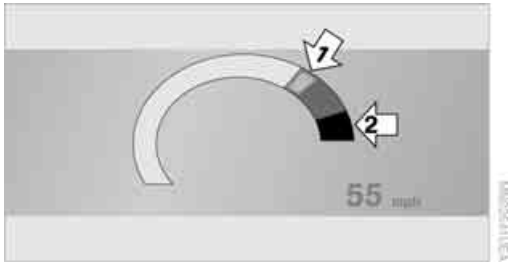
While shifting in the 5th/6th gear lane, press the gearshift lever toward the right, otherwise accidental shifting into the 3rd or 4th gear could result in engine damage.◀

When shifting into 1st gear, you may feel a slight jolt. This part of normal operation and no reason for concern.

Reverse gear

Select only when the vehicle is stationary. When pressing the gearshift lever to the left, overcome some resistance.

Shift lights



To achieve the best vehicle acceleration with a sporty driving style, shift lights in the Head-Up Display* indicate the optimum shifting point briefly before reaching the maximum rpm. Refer to Shift lights, page 62.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

M Engine Dynamic Control

With M Engine Dynamic Control you can influence how sporty the reaction of your vehicle to accelerator pedal movements is to be. Three programs are available to you.

"P 400" program

In the "P 400" program the engine reacts gently to movements of the accelerator pedal. This is, for example, ideal for city driving or driving on snow. In the process, the fuel consumption is minimal and the engine output is reduced.

"P 500" program

The "P 500" program provides maximum performance and more spontaneous reaction of the engine to accelerator pedal movements.

"P 500 Sport" program

In the "P 500 Sport" program the engine reacts especially spontaneously and uncompromisingly sporty with maximum performance to accelerator pedal movements.

Selecting program

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic

Each time the engine is started, the "P 400" program is activated.

Press the POWER button to activate the "P 500" program. Pressing the POWER button repeatedly switches between the programs "P 400" and "P 500".

You can also activate your preferred program with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 50.
Please activate the "P 500 Sport" program with MDrive.

For the programs "P 500" and "P 500 Sport" the LED in the POWER button lights up.

Manual transmission

Each time the engine is started, the "P 400" program is activated.

You can select the programs "P 400", "P 500" and "P 500 Sport" with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 50.

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic

The concept

The SMG Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic is an automated manual transmission in which an electrohydraulic system handles the clutching and gear changes.

CarManuals2.com

The Sequential Manual Transmission is operated with the selector lever and two shift paddles on the steering wheel.

It offers you the following functions:

- ▷ Optional manual or automatic operation: Sequential mode or Drive mode
- ▷ Selection option between different driving programs, Drivelogic, refer to page 61
- ▷ Upshift display, shift lights, refer to page 62
- ▷ Automatic downshifting and prevention of incorrect shifting even in Sequential operation
- ▷ Automatic double clutching

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Selector lever positions

CarManuals2.com

- R: Reverse gear
- N: Neutral
- ●: Drive position:
  - +: manual upshifting
  - –: manual downshifting
  - D/S: switch between Drive mode and Sequential mode

Shiftlock

Press the brake pedal before shifting out of N; the shift command will not be executed unless the brake is applied.

R Reverse

Select only when the vehicle is stationary.

N Idle

Always select before starting engine.

If the driving situation requires, e.g. when downshifting on a slippery road surface, the Sequential Manual Transmission automatically clutches and then declutches again, i.e. it is not necessary to manually shift into idling mode.

▷ The system shifts into N when you open the driver's door or the hood with the engine running and do not operate pedals, shift paddles or the selector lever. To begin driving after closing the driver's door or the hood, first shift the selector lever into the N position, and then shift into drive.◀

S Sequential mode

You can shift up and down using the shift paddles or the selector lever. You do not need to remove your foot from the accelerator to do so.

After every engine start, as soon as the selector lever is pushed to the right into the drive position ● and the brake pedal is pressed, the Sequential mode is activated.

Starting off is also possible on a level road surface in second gear, e.g. in case of ice.

In the following situations, the Sequential Manual Transmission thinks for you:

- Upshifts and downshifts are executed only when they will result in a plausible combination of engine and vehicle speed; thus, for example, a downshift that would cause the engine to overrev will not be executed by the system.
- When the vehicle is stationary, the transmission automatically downshifts into first gear.
- Shortly before dropping below a gear-dependent minimum speed, the transmission downshifts automatically even without your intervention.

D Drive mode

In the Drive mode, all forward gears are shifted automatically.

Shifting from Sequential mode to Drive mode: press selector lever to the right toward D/S.

To switch back into the Sequential mode: shift using the shift paddles or the selector lever or press selector lever to the right toward D/S again.

Kick-down: for rapid acceleration, e.g. when passing, press the accelerator pedal as far down as it will go. You achieve maximum acceleration.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Displays in instrument cluster

1 Gear 1 to 7, R, N engaged

2 Selected driving program, matches the number of illuminated fields, refer to Drivelogic on page 61

3 In drive mode, the currently selected gear followed by a D is displayed

The gear display flashes when you open the driver's door with the engine running. If you do not subsequently operate the pedals, shift paddles, or selector lever, then the system shifts into N.◀

Gear changes

Using selector lever

▷ To upshift, pull the selector lever back.

▷ To downshift, push the selector lever forward.

Using shift paddles on steering wheel

▷ To upshift, briefly pull the right shift paddle +.

▷ To downshift, briefly pull the left shift paddle –.

Drivelogic

With Drivelogic various driving programs are available to you.

Each time you change between the Sequential mode and the Drive mode, the respective last program is active. Exception: after the first change from the Sequential to the Drive mode, driving program 3 is active.

In Drive mode

There are five different driving programs, ranging from relaxed 1 to sporty/highly dynamic 5.

In Sequential mode

You can choose from six driving programs ranging from balanced/dynamic 1 to sporty/purist 6.

Each time the engine is started, driving program 3 is activated.

Program 6 is only available when the DSC Dynamic Stability Control is deactivated, refer to page 80. If DSC is activated, then the system switches from program 6 to program 5

To maintain vehicle stability, always activate DSC whenever possible.◀

Selecting driving program with button in center console

Press the button repeatedly until the desired driving program is displayed in the instrument cluster, refer to page. 61

CarManuals2.com

Selecting driving program via button on steering wheel

You can also activate your preferred driving program with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 50.

With the ignition switched on you can set MDrive on the Control Display.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "MDrive" and press the controller.
4. Select "SMG Drivelogic" and press the controller. The first setting is selected.

5. Turn controller to set Drive mode or Sequential mode.

   "Unchanged" retains the current settings made outside of MDrive.
6. Press controller to select driving programs.
7. Turn controller to set driving program.
8. Press the controller.

Shift lights

To achieve the best vehicle acceleration with a sporty driving style in the Sequential mode, shift lights in the Head-Up Display* indicate the optimum shifting point briefly before reaching the maximum rpm.

1. Switch on Head-Up Display, refer to Head-Up Display on page 89.
2. Select display "M View" on Head-Up Display, refer to Selecting displays on page 89.

   The current engine speed is highlighted on the tachometer.
3. When approaching the maximum rpm, yellow illuminated fields **1** of the tachometer consecutively indicate the approaching upshift point.
4. Shift at the latest when the red indicator field lights up **2**.

When the permissible maximum rpm is reached, the entire tachometer begins to flash. When the maximum rpm is exceeded, the fuel supply is cut off to protect the engine. Always avoid engine speeds in this range.

CarManuals2.com

Turn signals/ headlamp flasher

1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Turn signals

Using turn signals

Press the lever beyond the resistance point.

To turn off manually, press the lever to the resistance point.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Atypically rapid flashing of the indicator lamp indicates that a turn signal bulb needs to be replaced.◀

Signaling briefly

Press lever to resistance point and hold for as long as you wish to signal.

Triple turn signal activation

Press the lever to the resistance point; the turn signal flashes three times.

You can activate or deactivate this function.

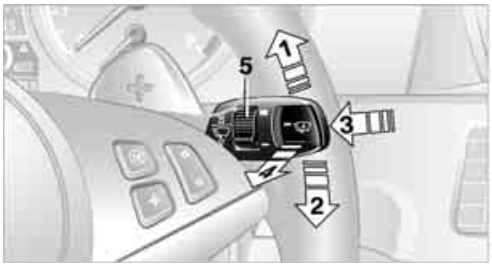
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Triple turn signal" and press the controller.
   Triple turn signaling is activated.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Wiper system



1 Switching on wipers
2 Switching off wipers or brief wipe
3 Activating/deactivating rain sensor
4 Cleaning windshield and headlamps
5 Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity level

Switching on wipers

Pull the lever upward, arrow **1**.

The lever automatically returns to its initial position when released.

Normal wiper speed

Press once.
The system reverts to operation in the intermittent mode when the vehicle is stationary.

Fast wiper speed

Press twice or press beyond the resistance point.
The system reverts to normal speed when the vehicle is stationary.

Rain sensor

The wiper operation is controlled automatically as a function of the rain intensity. The rain sensor is located on the windshield, directly in front of the interior rearview mirror.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Activating rain sensor

Press the button, arrow **3**. The LED in the button lights up.

Adjusting rain sensor sensitivity level

Turn the knurled wheel **5**.

Deactivating rain sensor

Press the button again, arrow **3**. The LED goes out.

Deactivate the rain sensor when passing through an automatic car wash. Failure to do so could result in damage caused by undesired wiper activation.◀

Cleaning windshield and headlamps

Pull the lever, arrow **4**.

The system sprays washer fluid against the windshield and activates the wipers for a brief period.

When the vehicle lighting is switched on, the headlamps are simultaneously washed at appropriate intervals.

Do not use the washing mechanisms if there is any danger that the fluid will freeze on the windshield. If you do so, your vision could be obscured. To avoid freezing, use a washer fluid antifreeze, refer to Washer fluid. Do not use washing mechanisms when the washer fluid reservoir is empty, otherwise you will damage the washer pump.◀

Windshield washer nozzles

Both windshield washer nozzles are automatically heated with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Washer fluid

Washer fluid antifreeze is flammable. For this reason, keep it away from ignition sources and store only in the closed original container out of reach of children. Otherwise, there is the danger of bodily injury. Always observe the instructions for use provided on the containers.◀

Filler neck for washer fluid

Only add washer fluid with the engine cooled down to exclude contact with hot engine components. Otherwise there is a danger of fire and to personal safety if the fluid is spilled.◀

CarManuals2.com

All washer nozzles are supplied from one reservoir.

Fill with water and – if required – with a washer antifreeze, according to manufacturer's recommendations.

In order to maintain the mixture ratio, mix the washer fluid before filling.◀

Capacity

Approx. 5.3 US quarts/5 liters.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

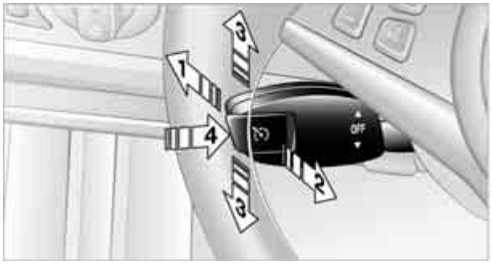
Cruise control

The concept

The cruise control is available for use at speeds of approx. 20 mph/30 km/h and higher. The vehicle stores and maintains the speed that you set using the lever mounted on the steering column. If the engine braking effect is insufficient on a downhill grade, the set speed may be exceeded. Speed can drop on uphill grades if the engine output is insufficient.

Do not use the cruise control under driving conditions that do not permit a constant speed, e.g. when driving on winding roads, in heavy traffic or in poor road conditions such as snow, rain, ice, and loose road surface. Otherwise you could loose control of the vehicle and cause an accident.◀

One lever for all functions



1 Maintaining, storing and increasing speed

2 Maintaining speed, storing speed, and decelerating

3 Interrupting and deactivating system

4 Resuming stored speed

Maintaining, storing and increasing speed

Press lever to resistance point, arrow **1**:
The speed currently being driven is maintained and stored. The display **1** in the speedometer, see below, indicates this regulated speed. Every time you press the lever, the vehicle's speed increases by roughly 1 mph/1 km/h.

Press lever to resistance point for a longer time: The vehicle accelerates without pressure on the accelerator pedal. The system maintains and stores your current speed as soon as you release the lever.

Maintaining speed, storing speed, and decelerating

Pull the lever, arrow **2**:
Functions are the same as **1**; the speed is reduced.

Interrupting system

Press the lever up or down, arrow **3**: the display **1** in the speedometer changes color.

In addition, the system is automatically interrupted:

- ▷ when braking
- ▷ for manual shifting with the shift paddles or the selector lever
- ▷ when the DSC comes on
- ▷ when you brake with the handbrake

Resuming stored speed

CarManuals2.com

Press button **4**:
The stored speed is resumed and maintained.

Deactivating system

- ▷ Press the lever up or down twice, arrow **3**
- ▷ Switch off the ignition

The speed stored in the memory is deleted.

Displays in instrument cluster

1 Stored speed

2 Selected speed is displayed briefly

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Everything under control

Odometer, outside temperature display, clock

1 Time, outside temperature, refer to Computer on page 67

2 Odometer and trip odometer

3 Press button:

- ▷ with ignition switched on, trip odometer is reset
- ▷ with ignition switched off, odometer is briefly displayed

Tachometer

The advance warning field, arrow **1**, and the red warning field, arrow **2**, change depending on the engine temperature. As the engine temperature rises, the permissible engine speed also increases. Avoid allowing the engine speed to rise as far as the orange warning field whenever possible.

Be sure to avoid engine speeds in the red warning field. At high revs in this range, the flow of fuel is interrupted to protect the engine.

Coolant temperature

Should the coolant, and with it the engine become too hot, a warning lamp lights up. In addition, a message appears on the Control Display.

Checking coolant level, refer to page 211.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Engine oil thermometer

The general operating temperature lies between 175 °F /80 °C and 250 °F /120 °C. Do not exceed a value of approx. 265 °F /130 °C.

If the engine oil temperature is too high, the permissible engine speed, and with it the available engine output is reduced.

Fuel gauge

Fuel tank capacity: approx. 18.5 US gal/ 70 liters. You will find information on refueling on page 198.

If the tilt of the vehicle varies for a longer period, when you are driving in mountainous areas, for example, the indicator may fluctuate slightly.

Reserve

After the reserve quantity has been reached, a message briefly appears on the Control Display; the remaining range is shown in the computer. Below a range of approx. 30 miles/50 km, the message remains on the Control Display.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Computer

Displays in instrument cluster

Press the button on the turn signal lever.

The following information is displayed in the specified order:

- ▷ Time and outside temperature
- ▷ Cruising range
- ▷ Average fuel consumption
- ▷ Oil level, refer to Checking engine oil level on page 208

Manual transmission:
The cruising range, average fuel consumption and oil level are shown in the lower display in place of the gear indicator.
It is possible to change between the time and data display by pressing the CHECK button.◀

Time

Setting the time, refer to page 75.

Outside temperature warning

If the display drops to +37 °F /+3 °C, a signal sounds and a warning lamp lights up. A message appears on the Control Display. There is an increased danger of ice.

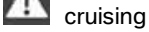
Even at temperatures above +37 °F / +3 °C ice can form. Therefore, drive carefully, e.g. on bridges and sections of road in the shade, otherwise there is an increased accident risk.◀

You can set the unit of measure °F or °C on the Control Display, refer to Units of measure on page 76.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Cruising range

Displays the estimated cruising range available with the remaining fuel. The range is projected based on the driving style over the last 20 miles/ 30 km.


Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption is calculated for the time during which the engine is running.

To reset average fuel consumption: press BC button on turn signal lever for approx. 2 seconds.

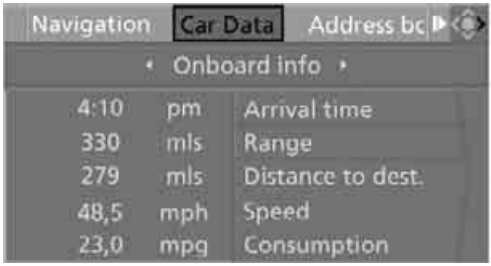
For different routes

You can display the average speed for two different routes on the Control Display, refer to the following and to Trip computer*.

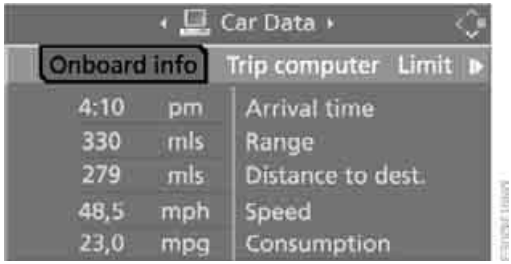
Displays on Control Display

You can also call up the computer via iDrive. For operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*:
   Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.



4. Select "Onboard info" and press the controller.



- ▷ Estimated time of arrival at destination and remaining distance:
  - ▷ Entering a distance manually in the computer, see below.
  - ▷ Entering a destination in the navigation system*, refer to page 122.
- ▷ Cruising range
- ▷ Average speed
- ▷ Average fuel consumption

Periods with the vehicle parked and the engine switched off are not included in the calculations of average speed.

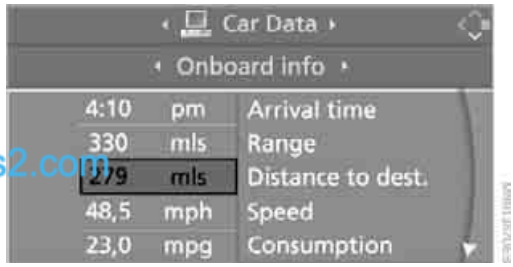
Resetting values

You can reset the values for the average speed and average fuel consumption:

1. Select the respective menu item and press the controller.
2. To confirm your selection, press the controller again.

Entering a distance manually

1. Select "Distance to dest." and press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

2. Turn the controller to select the distance to your destination. If needed, hold it against a slight resistance to enter a larger difference.
3. Press the controller to apply the setting.

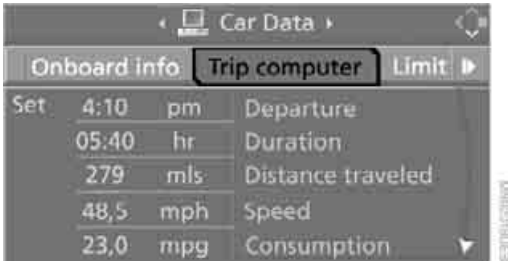
The distance is automatically preset during the destination guidance of the navigation system*.

CarManuals2.com

Trip computer

The trip computer is suitable, for example, for a vacation trip.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*:
   Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.
4. Select "Trip computer" and press the controller.



- ▷ Departure time
- ▷ Driving time
- ▷ Distance traveled
- ▷ Average speed
- ▷ Average fuel consumption

Starting or stopping the trip computer, or resetting all values:

1. Select "Set" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item.
3. Press the controller.

Display options

You can display the computer or the trip computer in the assistance window.

1. Move the controller to the right to change to the assistance window and press the controller.

2. Select "Onboard info" or "Trip computer".
3. Press the controller.

Service requirements

The remaining driving distance and the date for the next maintenance are displayed briefly with the ignition switched on.

The first oil change displayed at approx. 1,200 miles/2,000 km signals that the break-in check is due.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

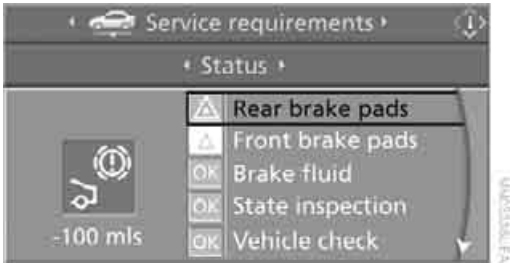
Your BMW Service Advisor can determine your vehicle's current service requirements by reading out the data stored in the remote control.◀

Additional information

You can select a display of more detailed information on the maintenance scope on the Control Display. For operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.
4. Select "Service Info" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.

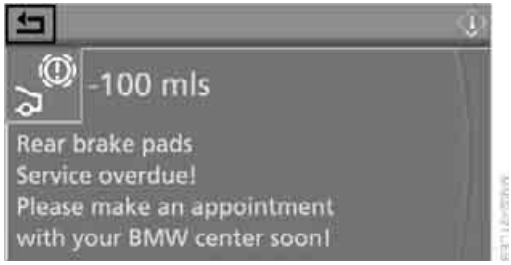
6. Select "Status" and press the controller.



The display shows a list of selected service and maintenance procedures, as well as legally mandated inspections.

You can request more detailed information on every entry.

Select the entry and press the controller.



To exit from the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Symbols

No service is currently required.

The deadline for service or a legally mandated inspection is approaching. Please arrange a service appointment.

The service deadline has already passed.

Entering deadlines for legally required inspections*

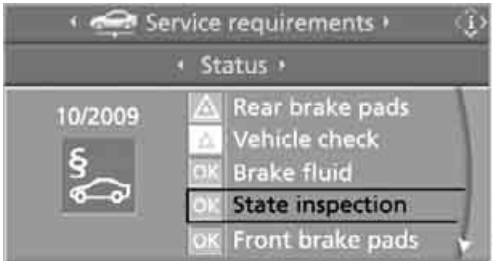
CarManuals2.com

Make sure the date on the Control Display is set correctly, refer to page 75, otherwise the effectiveness of CBS Condition Based Service is not ensured.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.
4. Select "Service Info" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Status" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

7. Select "State inspection" and press the controller.



8. Select "Set service date" and press the controller. The month is selected.
9. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.

10. Press the controller to apply the setting. The year is selected.
11. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
12. Press the controller to apply the setting. The date entry is stored.

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Check Control

The concept

The Check Control monitors functions in the vehicle and issues a message if there is a malfunction in the monitored systems. This kind of Check Control message consists of indicator and warning lamps in the instrument cluster, and if necessary an acoustic signal and text messages at the bottom of the Control Display.

Indicator and warning lamps

The indicator and warning lamps can light up in different combinations and colors.

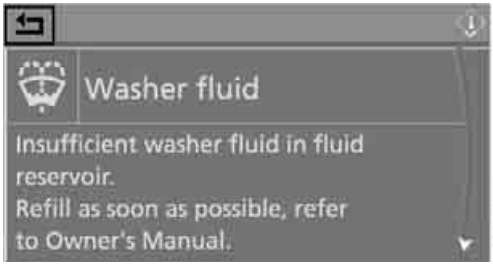
⚠ means that a Check Control message has been generated. The symbol continues to be visible even when the Check Control message disappears after a short time. The warning lamps and text messages are stored and can be displayed later, also refer to page 72.

Explanatory text messages

Text message at the bottom edge of the Control Display explain the meaning of the displayed indicator and warning lamps.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

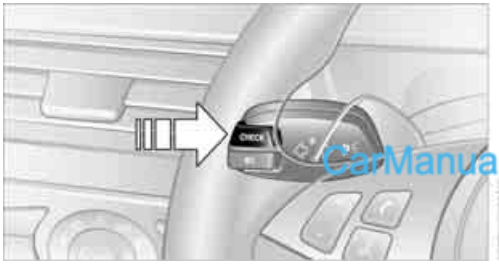


You can display additional information on most Check Control messages later, e.g. on the cause of the malfunction and on corresponding need for action, see below.

In urgent cases, this information will be shown as soon as the corresponding lamp comes on.

Exit the displayed information:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Hiding Check Control messages



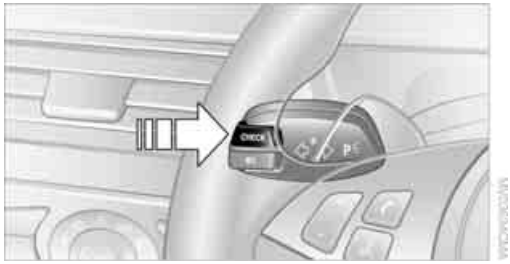
Press the CHECK button on turn signal lever.

Some Check Control messages are displayed until the malfunctions have been rectified. They cannot be hidden. If a number of malfunctions occur simultaneously, they are displayed in succession.

Other messages are automatically hidden after approx. 20 seconds, but remain stored.

Displaying stored Check Control messages

1. Press the button longer:
   The first stored message is displayed.



2. Press the button:
   When the button is pressed again, a different message is displayed.

Displaying additional information later

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

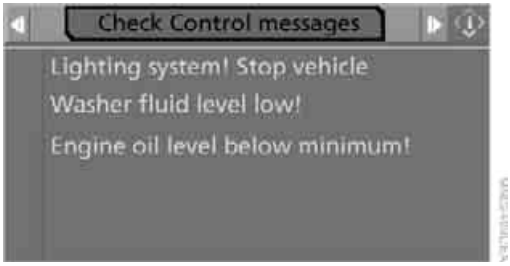
1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Info sources" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

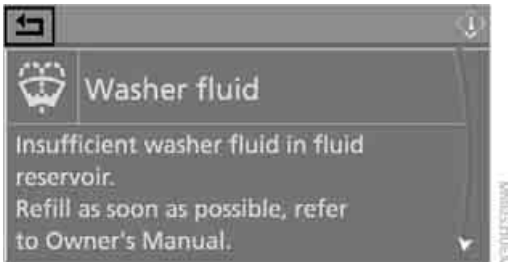
4. Turn the controller until "Service Info" is selected and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Check Control messages" is selected and press the controller.

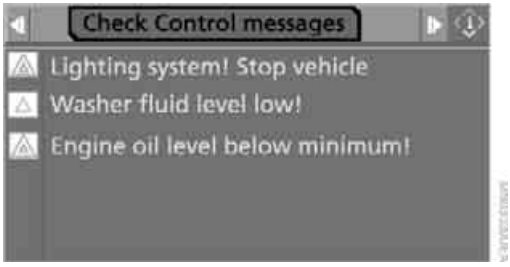


6. Select a text message and press the controller.



To exit the display:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Indication of malfunction urgency



Depending on your vehicle's equipment, the stored Check Control messages are also displayed with the following symbols:

OK No malfunctions are present in the monitored systems.

Malfunctions are present in the monitored systems. Depending on the malfunction, supplementary information is shown on the Control Display.

The symbols also indicate the status of the service requirements display, refer to page 69.

Displays after completion of trip

Malfunction reports generated during the trip are shown consecutively when you switch off the ignition.

Before the display disappears, you can display the messages once again. Press the CHECK button for approx. 2 seconds. If several messages are present, you can continue to press the CHECK button to view them in succession.

The display goes out

- ▷ automatically after a brief period
- ▷ when you press the CHECK button again for approx. 2 seconds

Speed limit

You can enter a speed and a Check Control message indicates when you have reached this speed. This enables you, for example, to receive warnings if you exceed a speed limit in an urban area.
You are only warned of reaching this speed a second time if your vehicle speed falls below it again by at least 3 mph/5 km/h.

Displaying, setting or changing limit

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*:
   Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.
4. Select "Limit" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

5. Select the speed value and press the controller.
6. Turn the controller to set the limit. If needed, hold it against a slight resistance to enter a larger difference.
7. Press the controller to apply the setting. The limit is automatically activated.

Applying your current speed as limit

Select "Select current speed" and press the controller. The system adopts your current speed as the limit.

Activating limit

Select "On" and press the controller.
Limit is automatically activated.

Stopwatch

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Navigation".
   Without navigation system*:
   Open "Car Data".
3. Select "Car Data" and press the controller.
4. Select "Stopwatch" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Starting, stopping or resetting

▷ Select "Start" and press the controller.
The stopwatch starts at the displayed time.

▷ Select "Reset" and press the controller.
The stopwatch is reset and it restarts if it was running beforehand.

▷ Select "Stop" and press the controller.
This stops the timer.

Taking an intermediate time reading

Select "Interim time" and press the controller. The interim time appears below the ongoing primary stopwatch count.

▷ All of the other functions remain available even while the stopwatch is running. The stopwatch continues operation in the background.◀

Settings on Control Display

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button once or twice until the start menu appears.

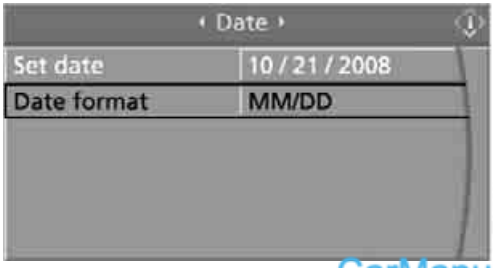
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

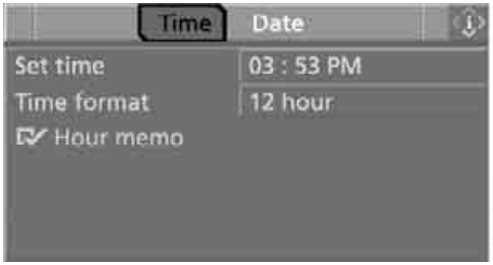
Setting time

1. Turn the controller until "Time / Date" is selected and press the controller.

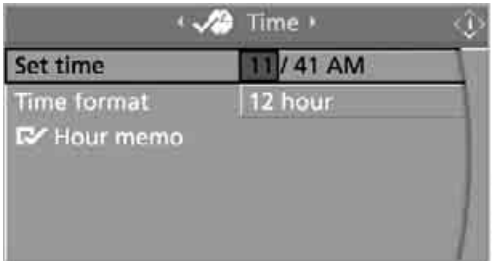
2. Move the controller once to the front if necessary to change to the first field from the top.



3. Turn the controller until "Time" is selected and press the controller.



4. Turn the controller until "Set time" is selected and press the controller.



Making settings

1. Turn the controller to set the hours and press the controller.
2. Turn the controller to set the minutes and press the controller.

The changed time is stored.

Switching on hour signal*

You will hear three tones just before the top of each hour.

Select "Hour memo" and press the controller.

The hour signal is activated.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Setting 12h/24h format

1. Select "Time format" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired format and press the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

CarManuals2.com

Setting date

1. Select "Date" and press the controller.

2. Select "Set date" and press the controller. The first section of the date display is selected, in this case the month.
3. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
4. Press the controller to apply the setting. The next setting is selected.
5. Make the remaining adjustments. After the last adjustment, the date is stored.

Setting date format

1. Select "Date format" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired format and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Brightness of Control Display

The brightness is automatically adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the basic setting.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button. This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Brightness" is selected and press the controller.

6. If necessary, move the controller to the right to select "Display".
7. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

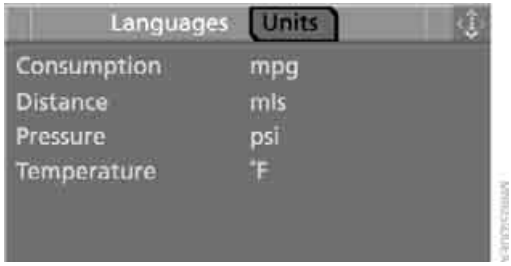
The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Units of measure

You can change the units of measure for consumption, distances, temperature and pressure.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button. This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Language / Units" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Units" is selected and press the controller.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

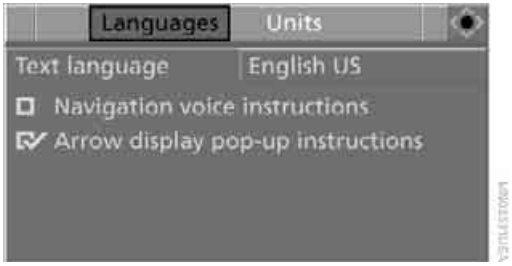
6. Select the menu item to be set and press the controller.
7. Select the desired unit of measure and press the controller.

The settings are stored for the remote key currently in use.

Language on Control Display

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Language / Units" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Languages" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "Text language" and press the controller. You can change the language of the text displays.
7. Select and activate the desired language by pressing the controller.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Volume of warning tones*

On vehicles equipped with a single drive, you can increase or decrease the volume of the warning tones, e.g. for the safety belt reminder, compared to the entertainment sound output. The warning tones have a specified minimum and maximum volume that cannot be dropped below or exceeded.

1. Select "Tone / Volume" and press the controller.
2. Select "Volume settings" and press the controller.

3. Change to the second field from the top if necessary. Select "Warning tones" and press the controller.
4. If necessary, change the field and turn the controller.
   The setting is applied.

CarManuals2.com

Technology for comfort, convenience and safety

PDC Park Distance Control*

CarManuals2.com

The concept

The PDC assists you when you are parking. Acoustic signals and an optical display* alert you to the approach of an object from behind your vehicle. To measure the distance, there are four ultrasonic sensors in each bumper. The range of these sensors is approx. 7 ft/2 m. However, an acoustic warning first sounds for the sensors at the front and at the two rear corners at approx. 24 in/60 cm, and for the center rear sensors at approx. 5 ft/1.50 m.

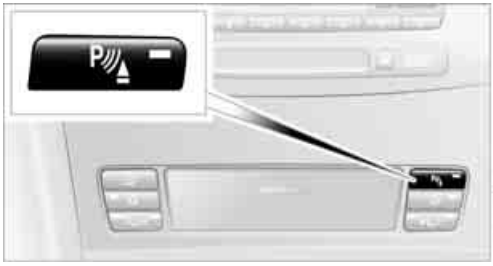
PDC is a parking aid that can indicate objects when they are approached slowly, as is usually the case when parking. Avoid approaching an object at high speed, otherwise the physical circumstances would mean that the system warning was too late.◀

Automatic activation

The system starts to operate approx. 1 second after you shift into reverse gear or move the selector lever into position R with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

Wait this short time before driving off.

Manual activation



Press the button, the LED lights up.

Manual deactivation

Press the button again; the LED goes out.

Automatic deactivation

After driving approx. 165 ft/50 m or at over approx. 20 mph/30 km/h, the system is switched off and the LED goes out. You can reactivate the system manually as needed.

Signal tones

When nearing an object, the position is correspondingly indicated by an interval tone. Thus, an object detected to the left rear of the vehicle will be indicated by a signal tone from the left rear speaker, etc. As the distance between vehicle and object decreases, the intervals between the tones become shorter. If the distance to the nearest object falls to below roughly 1 ft/30 cm, then a continuous tone sounds.

An intermittent tone is interrupted after approx. 3 seconds:

- ▷ if you remain in front of an object that was only detected by one of the corner sensors
- ▷ if you drive parallel to a wall

Malfunction

The LED in the button flashes and a message appears on the Control Display. PDC is malfunctioning. Have the system checked.

To prevent this problem, keep the sensors clean and free of ice or snow in order to ensure that they will continue to operate effectively. Do not spray the sensors with high-pressure cleaners for long periods and maintain a distance of at least 4 in/10 cm to them.

Exhaust gases near the rear sensors can cause a signal tone to sound.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

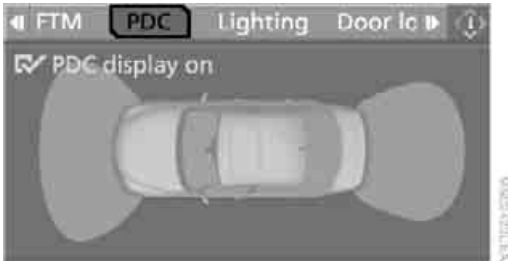
PDC with visual warning*

You can also have the system show distances to objects on the Control Display. Objects that are farther away are already shown there before a signal tone sounds. The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Turn the controller until "Vehicle / Tires" is selected and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "PDC" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "PDC display on" and press the controller.
   ✓ The PDC screen is activated.

The display appears on the Control Display as soon as PDC is activated.

System limits

⚠ Even with PDC, final responsibility for estimating the distance between the vehicle and any obstructions always remains with the driver. Even when sensors are provided, there is a blind spot in which objects can no longer be detected. The system is also subject to the physical limits that apply to all forms of ultrasonic measurement, such as those encountered with tow bars and trailer couplings, or thin and wedge-shaped objects etc. Low objects already displayed, e.g. curbs, can also disappear from the detection area of the sensors again before or after a continuous tone already sounds. Higher, protruding objects, e.g. ledges, cannot be detected. For this reason, drive with care; otherwise, there is a danger of personal injury or property damage.
Loud sources of sound, inside and outside the vehicle, could drown out the PDC signal tone.◀

Driving stability control systems

Your BMW is equipped with an extended array of systems designed to enhance and maintain vehicle stability under extreme conditions.

CarManuals2.com

ABS Antilock Brake System

ABS prevents locking of the wheels during braking. Safe steering response is maintained even during full braking. Active safety is thus increased.

The ABS is operational every time you start the engine. Braking safely refer to page 115.

CBC Cornering Brake Control

When braking during curves or when braking during a lane change, driving stability and steering response are improved further.

Electronic brake-force distribution

The system controls the brake pressure in the rear wheels to ensure stable braking behavior.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Brake assistant

When you apply the brakes rapidly, this system automatically produces the maximum braking force boost and thus helps to achieve the shortest possible braking distance during full braking. This system exploits all of the benefits provided by ABS.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal for the duration of the full braking.

DSC Dynamic Stability Control

DSC optimizes vehicle stability and traction. It also detects unstable driving states such as understeering and oversteering, and helps keep the vehicle on course within the physical limits by reducing the engine output and by braking at the wheels.

The DSC is operational every time you start the engine.

The laws of physics cannot be repealed, even with DSC. An appropriate driving style always remains the responsibility of the driver. Therefore, do not reduce the additional safety margin further by taking risks.◀

Indicator lamp

The indicator lamp goes out shortly after the engine is started.
The indicator lamp flashes: DSC controls the drive forces and brake forces.
The indicator lamp stays lit: DSC is deactivated.

M Dynamic Mode MDM

The M Dynamic Mode is a mode of the DSC Dynamic Stability Control. It enables driving with greater longitudinal and lateral acceleration on dry road surfaces, however with limited vehicle stability. The system does not provide stabilizing intervention by reducing the engine output and braking at the wheels until the absolute driving limit is reached. Additional steering corrections may also be required in this driving state.

The M Dynamic Mode is deactivated each time the engine is started.

With the M Dynamic Mode activated, stabilizing interventions are only carried out to a reduced degree. Take action yourself, otherwise there is a risk of an accident.◀

To maintain vehicle stability, drive with DSC activated and the M Dynamic Mode deactivated whenever possible.◀

Indicator lamp

MDM

The indicator lamp goes out shortly after the engine is started.
The indicator lamp stays lit: M Dynamic Mode is activated.
The indicator lamp lights up continuously and the DSC indicator lamp flashes: the M Dynamic Mode is active and controls the drive and braking forces.

Activating MDM

You activate the M Dynamic Mode with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 50.

With the ignition switched on you can set MDrive on the Control Display.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "MDrive" and press the controller.
4. Select "DSC" and press the controller.
5. Select "M Dynamic Mode" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

You can also activate and deactivate the M Dynamic Mode with the MDM button.

Deactivating MDM again

Press the button on the steering wheel or the MDM button* again; the MDM indicator lamp goes out.

Deactivating DSC

To maintain vehicle stability, drive with the system activated whenever possible.◀

When rocking free or starting off from deep snow or on loose road surfaces, it can be useful to briefly deactivate DSC.

Press the DSC OFF button*; the DSC indicator lamp lights up continuously. DSC and MDM are deactivated.

A message appears on the Control Display. Please note any supplementary information that appears there.

Manual transmission*:

Press and hold the MDM button.

Under unfavorable traction conditions, the engine output may be briefly reduced even when DSC is deactivated.

Reactivating DSC

Press the DSC OFF button; the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster goes out.

You can also activate and deactivate DSC with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 50.

CarManuals2.com

Manual transmission*:

Press the MDM button.

Malfunction in driving-stability control systems

The warning lamp for the brake system lights up, together with the indicator lamps for ABS, DSC and Tire Pressure Monitor or Flat Tire Monitor. A message appears on the Control Display. The driving-stability control systems have failed. Conventional braking efficiency remains available without limitations. While you may continue, you should remember to proceed cautiously and drive defensively while avoiding full brake applications. The Tire Pressure Monitor or the Flat Tire Monitor is also malfunctioning. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Display of the previously described malfunction in Canadian models.

The DSC warning lamp lights up. A malfunction has occurred in DSC including MDM. The stability maintenance functions are no longer available. The vehicle remains operational. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

The brake system warning lamp lights up yellow. A message appears on the Control Display. The brake assistant is defective. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Display of the previously described malfunction in Canadian models.

Starting assistant

On slopes

The starting assistant enables you to start off conveniently on slopes. The handbrake is not required for this purpose.

1. Hold the vehicle with the footbrake.
2. Release the footbrake and drive off quickly.

The starting assistant holds the vehicle for approx. 2 seconds after releasing the footbrake. After releasing the footbrake, begin to drive immediately; otherwise, the starting assistant no longer holds the vehicle after approx. 2 seconds and your vehicle will start to roll backward.◀

Start off quickly on slopes. Do not hold the vehicle on a hill by pressing the accelerator, but apply the footbrake or handbrake instead. Otherwise overheating and heavy wear can result in the area of the Sequential Manual Transmission.◀

To protect the clutch of the Sequential Manual Transmission from overheating, the starting-off behavior is changed under heavy loading, e.g. a rapid succession of starts on slopes. This can be noticed from shaking during starting off.

On a slippery surface

1. Select "P 400" program of M Engine Dynamic Control, refer to page 59.
2. Gently press accelerator pedal to prevent wheels from spinning when starting off.

Clutch protection with manual transmission

Be sure to avoid riding the clutch for longer periods.

Your BMW M5 is equipped with an overload protection for the clutch. Riding the clutch for longer periods is detected and the engine management system limits the engine speed to protect the clutch. This can result in the vehicle failing to accelerate when the clutch pedal is partially depressed.

EDC Electronic Damping Control

The concept

If the influencing variables such as road surface quality or operating conditions such as steering, braking etc. change, the damping automatically adjusts to the new conditions within a fraction of a second.

You can choose from three programs.

"Comfort" program

Select the "Comfort" program if you want comfort-oriented coordination of shock absorbers and steering.

"Normal" program

The "Normal" program offers a balanced mixture of the comfort and the sport program.

"Sport" program

Select the "Sport" program if you want a consistently sporty coordination of shock absorbers and steering.

Selecting program

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic:

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Manual transmission:

Press the EDC button repeatedly:

- ▷ "Comfort": LED off.
- ▷ "Normal": one LED lights up.
- ▷ "Sport": both LEDs light up.

The last selected program is active each time the engine is started.

You can also activate your preferred program with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 50.

FTM Flat Tire Monitor*

The concept

CarManuals2.com

The Flat Tire Monitor detects a pressure loss in one tire by comparing the speeds of the individual wheels during driving.

In the event of a pressure loss, there is a change in the rolling circumference and therefore the rotation speed of the corresponding wheel. The system detects this change and reports it as a flat tire.

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must be initialized for the correct tire inflation pressure.

▷ The initialization must be repeated after each time the tire inflation pressure is corrected and after every tire or wheel change.◀

System limits

The Flat Tire Monitor cannot indicate sudden severe tire damage caused by outside factors and does not detect a natural, even pressure drop in all four tires.

In the following situations, the system could be delayed or malfunction:

- ▷ System has not been initialized
- ▷ Driving on snowy or slippery road surface
- ▷ Sporty driving style: slip in the drive wheels, high lateral acceleration
- ▷ Driving with snow chains*

Initializing system

▷ The initialization finishes during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, the initialization is continued automatically. Do not initialize the system when driving with snow chains.◀

With Sequential Manual Transmission via the button in the center console:

1. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
2. Press the button for approx. 5 seconds. After the button is released, the warning lamp lights up in yellow for several seconds in the instrument cluster, refer to Indication of a flat tire. The message "Initializing FTM ..." appears on the Control Display for a few seconds.

3. Start to drive.
   The initialization finishes during driving without feedback.

Via iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16:

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "FTM" is selected and press the controller.

6. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
7. Select "Reset" and press the controller.
8. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

"resetting FTM ..." is displayed for a few seconds. The warning lamp in the instrument cluster lights up yellow for a few seconds.

9. Start to drive.
   The initialization finishes during driving without feedback.

Indication of a flat tire

The warning lamp lights up red. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, an acoustic signal sounds.

There is a flat tire or extensive inflation pressure loss.

1. Reduce speed and stop the vehicle carefully. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. Identify damaged tire. To do this, check the tire inflation pressure using the M Mobility System, refer to Producing tire inflation pressure on page 219.
3. Repair flat tire with M Mobility System, refer to page 217, or replace the damaged wheel, refer to Changing wheels on page 219.

TPM Tire Pressure Monitor*

The concept

TPM checks the tire inflation pressure in the four mounted tires. The system reports when the tire inflation pressure has dropped considerably in one or several tires.

Functional requirement

In order to assure the reliable reporting of a flat tire, the system must be reset at the correct tire inflation pressure.

Always use wheels with TPM electronics, otherwise fault-free operation of the system is not ensured.

Reset the system again after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

System limits

TPM cannot announce sudden serious tire damage caused by external influences.

The system does not function properly if it has not been reset, e.g. a flat tire is reported despite correct tire inflation pressures.

The system is inactive and cannot display a flat tire if a wheel has been mounted without TPM electronics, or if TPM is temporarily interfered with by other systems or devices which use the same radio frequency.

Status display on Control Display

The tire and system status is indicated by the color of the tires.

TPM takes the fact that the tire pressure changes during driving into account. A correction is only required if requested by TPM with the color.

Green

The tire pressure matches the learned set state.

"TPM active" is displayed on the Control Display.

One wheel is yellow

Flat tire or a major drop in inflation pressure in the indicated tire. A message appears on the Control Display.

All wheels are yellow

Flat tire or a major drop in inflation pressure in several tires. A message appears on the Control Display.

Gray

The system cannot detect a flat tire.

Reasons for this can be:

- ▷ TPM is being reset
- ▷ Temporary interference due to systems or devices which use the same radio frequency
- ▷ Malfunction

Resetting system

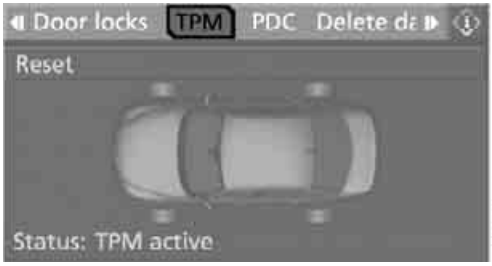
▷ Reset the system again after each correction of the tire inflation pressure and after every tire or wheel change.◀

Resetting finishes during driving, which can be interrupted at any time. When driving resumes, resetting is continued automatically.

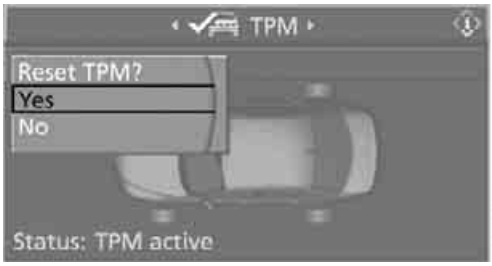
CarManuals2.com

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "TPM" is selected and press the controller.



6. Start the engine, but do not start driving.
7. Select "Reset" and press the controller.
8. Select "Yes" and press the controller.



9. Start to drive.
   The tires are shown in gray and "Resetting TPM..." is displayed.

After a few minutes of driving, the set tire inflation pressures in the tires are applied as the set values to be monitored. Resetting finishes dur-

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

ing driving. The tires are shown in green on the Control Display.

▷ If a flat tire is detected during resetting and applying the tire inflation pressures, all tires are shown in yellow on the Control Display. The message "Tire low!" is displayed.◀

Message with low tire inflation pressure

The warning lamp lights up yellow. A message appears on the Control Display. In addition, an acoustic signal sounds. There is a flat tire or extensive inflation pressure loss.

1. Reduce speed and stop the vehicle carefully. Avoid sudden braking and steering maneuvers.
2. If all four wheels are shown in yellow, identify the damaged tire on the vehicle.
3. Repairing flat tire with M Mobility System, refer to page 217, or replace the damaged wheel or wheels, refer to Changing wheels* on page 219.

The spare tire* is equipped with the necessary TPM electronics and is also monitored after mounting and after resetting the system.

Have the tire replaced by a BMW center or a workshop informed on handling TPM which works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Malfunction

The yellow warning lamp flashes and then lights up continuously. The tires are shown in gray on the Control Display and a message is displayed. No flat tire can be detected.

A message like this is displayed in the following situations:

- ▷ In case of a malfunction; have the system checked.
- ▷ If a wheel is mounted without TPM electronics
- ▷ If TPM is temporarily interfered with by other systems or devices which use the same radio frequency.

Declaration according to NHTSA/ FMVSS 138 Tire Pressure Monitoring Systems

Each tire, including the spare*, should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires. As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system, TPMS, that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires are significantly underinflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Underinflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if underinflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

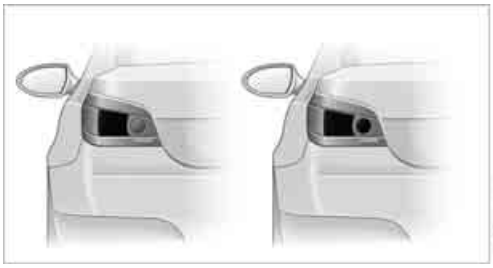
The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle startups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator lights up, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Brake force display



On the left: normal braking.

On the right: heavy braking.

Airbags

CarManuals2.com

The following airbags are located under the marked covers:

1 Front airbags

2 Head airbags

3 Side airbags in front and rear

Protective action

To ensure that the safety systems continue to provide optimized protection, please observe the adjustment instructions on page 41.◀

The front airbags help protect the driver and front passenger by responding to frontal impacts in which safety belts alone cannot provide adequate restraint. When needed, the head and side airbags help provide protection in the event of side impact. The relevant side airbag supports the side upper body area. The head air bag supports the head.

The airbags are deliberately not triggered in every impact situation, e.g. less severe accidents or rear-end collisions.

Do not apply adhesive materials to the cover panels of the airbags, cover them or modify them in any other way. Do not attempt to remove the airbag restraint system from the vehicle. Do not modify or tamper with either the wiring or the individual components in the airbag system. This category includes the upholstery in the center of the steering wheel, on the instrument panel, the doors and the roof pillars along with the sides of the headliner. Do not attempt to remove or dismantle the steering wheel. Do not touch the individual components immediately after the system has been triggered, because there is a danger of burns.
In the event of malfunctions, deactivation, or triggering of the airbag restraint system, have the testing, repair, removal, and disposal of airbag generators executed only by a BMW center

or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel and has the required explosives licenses. Otherwise unprofessional attempts to service the system could lead to failure in an emergency or undesired airbag triggering, either of which could result in personal injury.◀

CarManuals2.com

Warnings and information on the airbags is also provided on the sun visors.

Automatic deactivation of front passenger airbags

The occupation of the seat is detected by evaluating the impression on the occupied seat surface of the front passenger seat. The front and side airbags on the front passenger side are activated or deactivated accordingly by the system.

▷ The current status of the front passenger airbag, i.e. deactivated or activated, is indicated by the indicator lamp over the interior rearview mirror, refer to Operating state of front passenger airbags in the following.◀

⚠ Before transporting a child on the front passenger seat, observe the safety information and handling instructions under Transporting children safely refer to page 53.
The front and side airbags on the front passenger side can be deactivated for teenagers and adults in certain sitting positions; then the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up. In these cases, change the sitting position so that the front passenger airbags are activated and the indicator lamp goes out. If the desired status cannot be produced by changing the sitting position, transport the corresponding person on the rear seat. Do not fit seat covers, seat cushion padding, ball mats or other items onto the front passenger seat unless they are specifically recommended by BMW. Do not lay objects under the seat which could press against the seat from below. Otherwise a correct evaluation of the occupied seat surface cannot be ensured.◀

Operating state of front passenger airbags

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

The indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags indicates the operating status of the front and side airbags on the front passenger side depending on the seat occupation. The indicator lamp shows whether the front passenger airbags are activated or deactivated.

▷ The indicator lamp lights up when a child in a child restraint system intended for the purpose is properly detected on the seat. The front and side airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.

▷ Most child's seats are detected by the system. Especially the child's seats required by the NHTSA at the time the vehicle is manufactured. After installing a child's seat, make sure that the indicator lamp for the front passenger airbags lights up. This indicates that the child's seat has been detected and the front passenger airbags are not activated.◀

▷ The indicator lamp does not light up when, for example, a correctly seated person of sufficient height is detected on the seat. The front and side airbags on the front passenger side are activated.

▷ The indicator lamp does not light up when the seat is empty.
However, the front and side airbags on the front passenger side are not activated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Operational readiness of airbag system

From radio readiness, refer to page 56, the warning lamp lights up briefly, indicating the operational readiness of the entire airbag system and the safety belt tensioners.

Airbag system malfunction

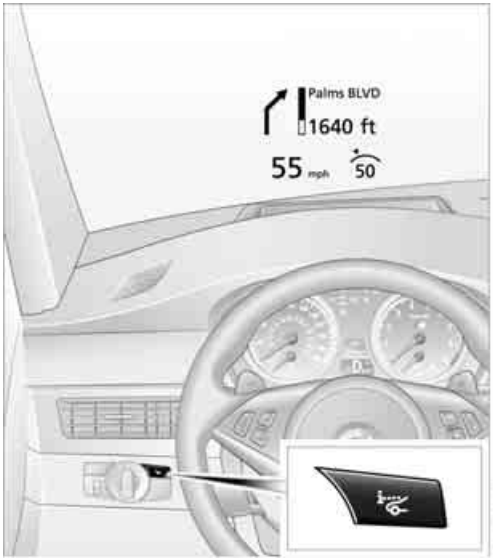
- ▷ Warning lamp does not light up from radio readiness.
- ▷ Warning lamp lights up continuously.

⚠ Have the airbag system checked immediately in case of a malfunction, otherwise there is a danger that the airbag system may not respond in the expected manner in an accident despite an impact of corresponding intensity.◀

Head-Up Display*

The concept

With the Head-Up Display important information is projected into the driver's field of view, e.g. navigation instructions. This enables you to take in this information without looking away from the road.



Switching on/off

Press the button.

Selecting displays

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Head-Up Display" is selected and press the controller.
6. Change into the second field from the top. Turn the controller until "Head-Up Display" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

7. Select desired information of Head-Up Display.

8. Press the controller.
   The information appears in the Head-Up Display.
   "M View": the M view appears in the Head-Up Display. Information unavailable in the M view appears on the Control Display in gray and cannot be selected.
   "M View": the default view is displayed.

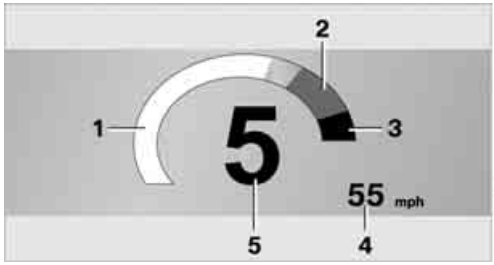
The M view for the Head-Up Display can also be selected with the button on the steering wheel, refer to MDrive on page 50.

The settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Default view

1 Navigation instructions
2 Stored desired speed of cruise control
3 Speed

"M view"



1 Current engine speed, highlighted
2 Advance warning field of tachometer
3 Red warning field of tachometer, also refer to Tachometer on page 66
4 Speed
5 Gear display

For information on the shift lights in the tachometer, refer to page 62.

Setting brightness

The brightness of the display is automatically adapted to the ambient lighting conditions. However, you can change the basic setting. With the low beams switched on, the brightness can also be adjusted with the knurled wheel of the instrument lighting.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Display settings" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Head-Up Display" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

6. Change into the second field from the top. Turn the controller until "Brightness" is selected and press the controller.

7. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Notes

The visibility of the displays in the Head-Up Display is influenced by:

- ▷ Sunglasses with certain polarization filters
- ▷ Certain seating positions
- ▷ Objects on the cover of the Head-Up Display
- ▷ Wet road surface and unfavorable lighting conditions

If the image is distorted, please have the basic setting checked at a BMW center.

Special windshield

The windshield is part of the system. The shape of the windshield complies with the requirements of the Head-Up Display to enable a precise display. A film in the windshield prevents the double images from being displayed. Windshield replacement should be carried out by a BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Care instructions

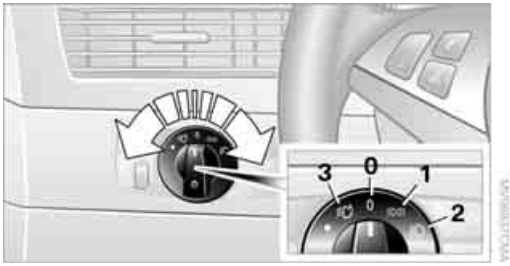
You can find everything you need to know on this topic by consulting the separate Caring for your vehicle brochure.

⚠ Only clean the cover of the Head-Up Display with a soft, nonabrasive cloth or with a display cleaning cloth; otherwise, you may damage it.◀

CarManuals2.com

Lamps

Parking lamps/low beams



0 Lights off and daytime running lamps*

1 Parking lamps and daytime running lamps*

2 Low beams and welcome lamps

3 Automatic headlamp control, daytime running lamps*, welcome lamps, Adaptive Head Light* and high-beam assistant*

If you open the driver's door with the ignition switched off, the exterior lighting is automatically switched off when the light switch is in position **0**, **2** or **3**.

CarManuals2.com

Parking lamps

In switch position **1**, the front, rear and side vehicle lighting is switched on. You can use the parking lamps for parking.

The parking lamps drain the battery. Do not leave them switched on for long periods of time, otherwise it may no longer be possible to start the engine. It is preferable to switch on the roadside parking lamps on one side, refer to page 94.◀

Low beams

The low beams light up when the light switch is in position **2** and the ignition is on.

Automatic headlamp control

In switch position **3**, the system activates the low beams and switches them on or off in response to changes in ambient light conditions, for instance, in a tunnel, at dawn and dusk and in case of precipitation. Adaptive Head Light* is active. The LED next to the symbol lights up when the low beams are on. You can activate the daytime running lamps, refer to page 93. In the situations named above, the system then automatically switches over to the low beams.

A blue sky with the sun low on the horizon can cause the lights to be switched on.

The automatic headlamp control cannot serve as a substitute for your personal judgment in determining when the lamps should be switched on in response to ambient lighting conditions. For example, the sensors cannot detect fog of hazy weather. To avoid safety risks, you should always switch on the low beams manually under these conditions.◀

Welcome lamps

If you leave the light switch in position **2** or **3** when parking the vehicle, then when you unlock the vehicle, the parking lamps and interior lighting remain illuminated for a brief time.

Activating/deactivating welcome lamps

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Welcome light" and press the controller.

   The welcome lamps are switched on.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Pathway lighting

When you activate the headlamp flasher after parking the vehicle and switching off the lamps, the low beams will come on for a brief period. You can set the duration or deactivate the function via iDrive.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Pathway lighting" and press the controller.
7. Turn the controller to select the desired duration.
8. Press the controller to apply the setting.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Daytime running lamps*

The daytime running lamps light up in position **0**, **1** and **3**. If the light switch remains in position **1**, the parking lamps light up after the ignition is switched off.

Activating/deactivating daytime running lamps*

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

6. Select "Daytime running lamps" and press the controller.

   The daytime running lamps are switched on.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Adaptive Head Light*

The concept

Adaptive Head Light is a variable headlamp control system that enables better illumination of the road surface. Depending on the steering angle and other parameters, the light from the headlamp follows the course of the road.

In tight curves at speeds up to approx. 45 mph/ 70 km/h, e.g. on mountainous roads or when negotiating curves, turning lamps are switched on that light up the inside area of the curve.

Activating Adaptive Head Light

With the ignition switched on, turn the light switch into position **3**, refer to page 92.

The turning lamps are automatically switched on depending on the steering angle or the use of turn signals.

To avoid blinding oncoming traffic, the Adaptive Head Light directs light towards the front passenger side when the vehicle is at a standstill. When driving in reverse, only the turning lamps are active and illuminate the outer area of curves.

High beams/ roadside parking lamps

1 High beams

2 Headlamp flasher

3 Roadside parking lamps

Roadside parking lamps, left or right*

You also enjoy the option of lighting up just one side of your vehicle when parking:

Switching on

After parking the vehicle, press the lever up or down beyond the resistance point, arrow **3**.

▷ The roadside parking lamps drain the battery. Do not leave them switched on for long periods of time, otherwise it may no longer be possible to start the engine.◀

Switching off

Briefly press the lever in the opposite direction up to the resistance point, arrow **3**.

High-beam assistant*

The concept

This system automatically switches the high beams on and off. A sensor on the front side of the inside rearview mirror controls the process. The assistant makes sure that the high beams are switched on whenever traffic conditions permit. This relieves you of the burden of constantly switching back and forth and simultaneously provides you with the best possible visibility. Naturally, you can intervene at any time to switch the high beams on and off as usual.

Activating system

1. Turn the light switch to position **3**, refer to page 92.
2. With the low beams switched on, briefly press the turn signal lever in the high-beam direction.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up when the high-beam assistant is activated. The system automatically switches between high beams and low beams, reacting to oncoming traffic, vehicles ahead of you, and sufficiently lit areas, e.g. in built-up zones.

Manually switching between high beams and low beams

If you wish or the situation requires, you can intervene at any time.

- If the high-beam assistant has switched on the high beams, but you wish to use the low beams, just switch on the low beams with the turn signal lever. This deactivates the high-beam assistant.
  In order to reactivate the system, briefly press the turn signal lever in the high-beam direction.
- If the high-beam assistant has switched on the low beams, but you wish to use the high beams, simply switch on the high beams as usual. This deactivates the system and it is up to you to switch back to low beams.
  In order to reactivate the system, briefly press the turn signal lever in the high-beam direction.
- When the low beams are on, use the headlamp flasher as usual.

CarManuals2.com

System limits

The high-beam assistant is designed to maximize the amount of time that high beams can be safely used and to quickly switch back to low beams when traffic approaches. The system cannot completely replace driver intervention when unusual conditions are encountered. For this reason, switch to low beams when circumstances so dictate. Failure to do so can pose a safety risk.◀

Below are a few examples of situations in which the system may not react or may only function to a limited degree, requiring personal intervention:

- in extremely unfavorable weather conditions such as fog or heavy precipitation
- in sensing road users with poor inherent illumination such as pedestrians, cyclists, equestrians, horsedrawn vehicles, railroad or shipping traffic close to the road, and at deer crossings
- in tight curves, on steep crests or dips, with cross-traffic, or with partially hidden oncoming traffic on divided highways
- in poorly illuminated areas and in the presence of highly reflective signs
- in the low speed range
- when the windshield is fogged up, dirty or covered with stickers, decals etc. in the area of the inside rearview mirror
- when the sensor is dirty. Clean the sensor on the front side of the inside rearview mirror with a cloth slightly moistened with glass cleaner

Moreover, no system can operate without limitations. High-beam assistant operation is subject to conditions that may reduce the system's ability to recognize the difference between actual vehicle head lamps or tail lamps and, for example, highly reflective signs, markers, and streetlights. To be on the safe side, the system may periodically interpret these situations as conditions that require low beams. Below are some of the situations in which premature switching to low beams can occur:

- approaching large and/or highly reflective signs
- approaching certain lights, such as driveway lighting and porch lights
- approaching certain traffic signals
- approaching large reflective markers

In these situations, the system may interpret the above conditions as a vehicle ahead requiring a switch to low beams. When the conditions return to normal, the system will reactivate the high beams.

The high-beam assistant cannot replace the driver's responsibility for complying with state laws on high-beam switching or for adapting to visibility and traffic conditions.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Switching off via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Lighting" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "High-beam assistant" and press the controller.

   ◘ High-beam assistant is switched off.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Instrument lighting

The lighting intensity can be adjusted with the knurled wheel with the parking lamps/low beams switched on.

CarManuals2.com

Interior lamps

The interior lamps, footwell lamps, door entry lighting and courtesy lamps* are controlled automatically.

With the courtesy lamps, LED lights are located in the door handles to illuminate the exterior area before the doors.

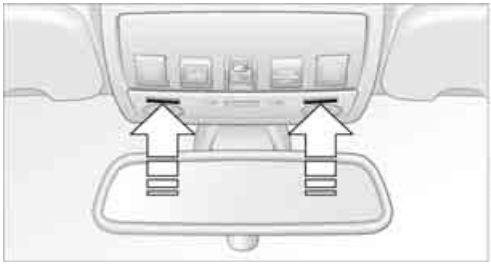
▷ To protect the battery, all lamps in the vehicle are switched off approx. 15 minutes after radio readiness is switched off, refer to Start/Stop button on page 56.◀

Switching interior lamps on and off manually

Press the button.

If the interior lamps, footwell lamps, door entry lighting and courtesy lamps are to remain switched off continually, press the button for approx. 3 seconds.

Reading lamps

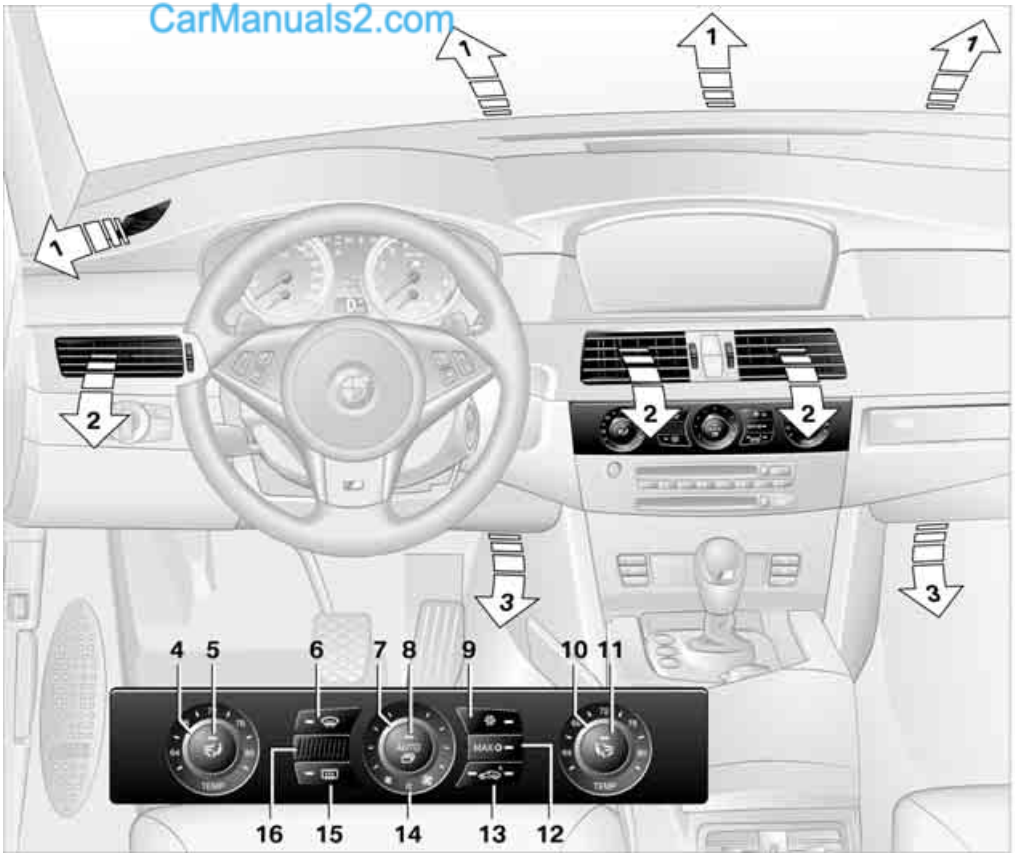


Reading lamps are located in the front and rear adjacent to the interior lamps. Press the button to switch the lamps on and off.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Climate

Automatic climate control



1 Air directed toward the windshield and side windows

2 Air for the upper body region, refer to Front ventilation on page 101

3 Air to footwell

4 Temperature, left side of passenger compartment

5 Manual air distribution, driver's side

6 Defrosting windows and removing condensation

7 Manual air volume, switching off automatic climate control, residual heat utilization

8 AUTO program

9 Switching cooling function on and off manually

10 Temperature, right side of passenger compartment

11 Manual air distribution, front passenger side

12 Maximum cooling

13 AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/ recirculated-air mode

14 LED for residual heat utilization and parked-car ventilation system

15 Rear window defroster

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

16 Air grill for interior temperature sensor – please keep clear and unobstructed

The current setting for air distribution is displayed on the Control Display.

A congenial climate

The AUTO program offers the optimum air distribution and air volume for virtually all conditions, refer to AUTO program below. Now you only need to select an interior temperature pleasant to you.

The following sections contain more detailed information on the available setting options.

Most settings are stored for the remote control currently in use, also refer to Personal Profile settings on page 29.

AUTO program

The AUTO program handles the adjustment of air volume and air distribution to the windshield and side windows, in the direction of the upper body and in the footwell. It also adapts your instructions for the temperature to outside influences throughout the year.

The cooling is switched on automatically with the AUTO program. At the same time, a condensation sensor controls the program in such a way that window condensation is prevented as much as possible.

Intensity of AUTO program

You can adjust the intensity of the AUTO program by repeatedly pressing the AUTO button. The respective current setting is briefly displayed on the Control Display when the button is pressed.

You can also adjust the intensity of the AUTO program via iDrive.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Automatic programs" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

4. Select the desired intensity and press the controller.

   ☑ The marked intensity of the automatic program is switched on.

Temperature

Set the desired temperature individually on the driver's and front passenger side.

The automatic climate control adjusts this temperature as quickly as possible at any time of year, if necessary with the maximum cooling or heating capacity, and then keeps it constant.

▷ When changing between different temperature settings in rapid succession, the automatic climate control does not have sufficient time to adjust the set temperature.◀

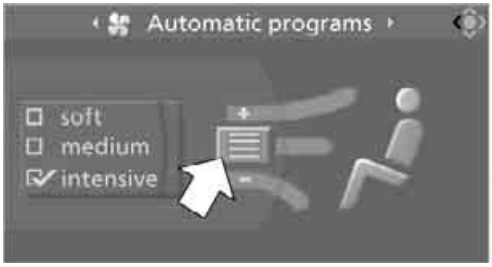
In the highest setting you activate the maximum heating output, regardless of the outside temperature.

Adjusting temperature in upper body region

1. Press the button to display the current setting on the Control Display.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

2. Select the field by moving the controller and turning the controller to adjust the temperature.



You can also adjust the temperature in the upper body region with iDrive.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Climate".
3. Select "Vent settings" and press the controller.
4. Select the field by moving the controller and turning the controller to adjust the temperature.

CarManuals2.com

Defrosting windows and removing condensation

Quickly remove ice and condensation from the windshield and front side windows.

To do this, also switch on the cooling function.

Rear window defroster

The rear window defroster switches off automatically after a while. Depending on the vehicle equipment, upper wires are used as an antenna and are not part of the rear window defroster.

Air volume, manual

You can adjust the air volume by turning. You can reactivate the automatic mode for the air volume with the AUTO button.

The air quantity is reduced and if need be, the ventilation is switched off in order to reduce the load on the battery. The display stays the same.

Manual air distribution

You can route the air flowing out into the vehicle interior via various programs, separately for the driver's and passenger's side:

- ▷ Upper body region
- ▷ Upper body region and footwell
- ▷ Footwell
- ▷ Driver's side: windows and footwell
- ▷ Individual program

Selecting program

Press the button repeatedly until the desired air distribution of the respective program is shown on the Control Display.

Adjusting air distribution individually – individual program

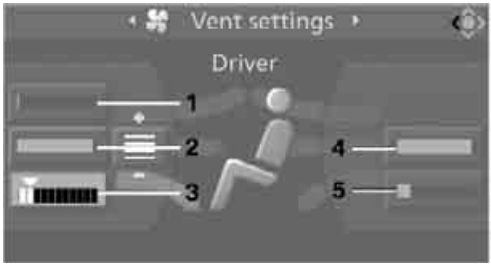
Your settings are stored in this program.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Open "Climate".
3. Select "Vent settings" and press the controller.
   The driver's and front passenger side can be adjusted separately with the fields on the right or left side.
4. Select the driver's or front passenger side if necessary.
   Move the controller to the right or left repeatedly until the driver's or front passenger side is selected.
5. Select the desired field by moving the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

6. Turn the controller to adjust the air distribution.



Driver's side:

1 Air directed toward the windshield and side windows

2 Air for the upper body

3 Air to footwell

Front passenger side:

4 Air for the upper body

5 Air to footwell

▷ Pressing the AUTO button cancels the manual air distribution settings.◀

The automatic mode for the air volume remains effective with manual air distribution.

Switching cooling function on and off

The cooling function cools and dehumidifies the incoming air before also reheating it as required, according to the temperature setting. This function is only available when the engine is running.

The cooling function helps to avoid condensation on the window surfaces or to quickly remove them.

Depending on the weather, the windshield may fog over briefly when the engine is started.

The cooling function is switched on automatically with the AUTO program.

Maximum cooling

Maximally cooled air is obtained as quickly as possible at an outside temperature above approx. 32 °F / 0 °C and with the engine running.

At the lowest temperature, the automatic climate control switches into recirculating air mode. The maximum air volume flows out of the vents for the upper body. Therefore, open these vents for maximum cooling.

AUC Automatic recirculated-air control/recirculated-air mode

You can respond to pollutants or unpleasant odors in the immediate environment by suspending the supply of outside air. The system then recirculates the air currently within the vehicle. During AUC operation, a sensor detects pollutants in the outside air and controls the shut-off automatically.

By pressing the button repeatedly, you can request three operating modes:

▷ LED off: outside air flows in continuously.

▷ Right LED on, AUC mode: the system detects pollutants in the outside air and shuts off the supply as needed.

▷ Left LED on, recirculated-air mode: the supply of outside air is permanently shut off.

⚠ Should the windows fog up in the recirculated-air mode, press the AUTO button or switch off the recirculated-air mode and increase the air volume if necessary.
The recirculated-air mode should not be used over an extended period of time, as the air quality inside the vehicle deteriorates continuously.◀

Residual heat

The heat stored in the engine is used to heat the passenger compartment, e.g. while stopped at a school to pick up a child.

1. Switch off the engine.
2. Turn to the right, refer to arrow.

The function can be switched on when the following conditions are met:

▷ up to 15 minutes after switching off the engine

▷ with engine at operating temperature

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

▷ with sufficient battery voltage

▷ at an outside temperature below 77 °F / 25 °C

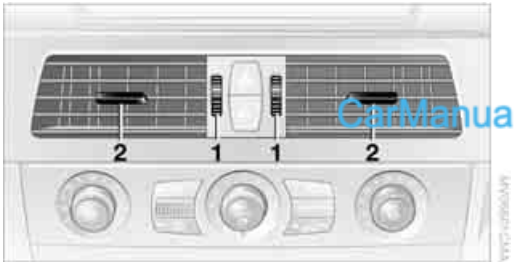
From radio readiness the interior temperature, the air volume and the air distribution can be set.

Switching automatic climate control on and off

1. Turn to the left to minimum air volume.
2. After approx. 1 second, turn to the left again.

You switch on the system again by pressing any button of the automatic climate control.

Front ventilation



1 Knurled wheels to smoothly open and close vent outlets

2 Levers to change the vent outlet direction

⚠ Do not drop any foreign objects into the vent outlets, otherwise these could be catapulted outwards and lead to injuries.◀

Ventilation for cooling

Adjust the vent outlets to direct the flow of cool air in your direction, for instance, if the interior has become too warm, etc.

Draft-free ventilation

Set the vent outlets so that the air flows past you and is not directed straight at you.

Rear ventilation

1 Knurled wheel to smoothly open and close vent outlets

2 Knurled wheel to adjust the temperature:

▷ Turn toward blue: colder

▷ Turn toward red: warmer

3 Levers to change the vent outlet direction

Microfilter/activated-charcoal filter

The microfilter removes dust and pollen from the incoming air. The activated-charcoal filter provides additional protection by filtering gaseous pollutants from the outside air. Your BMW center replaces this combined filter as a standard part of your scheduled maintenance.

CarManuals2.com

Parked car ventilation

The concept

The parked car ventilation blows air into the passenger compartment to lower interior temperatures.

It is ready to use in the parked car mode at any outside temperature.

You can set two different times for the system to start. The parked car ventilation can also be switched on and off directly. It remains switched on for 30 minutes.

Since the system uses a substantial amount of electrical current, you should refrain from activating it twice in succession without allowing the battery to be recharged in normal operation between use.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

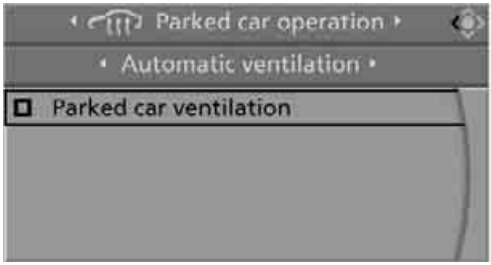
The air emerges through the upper body region vent outlets in the instrument panel. These vent outlets must be open for the system to operate.

The parked car ventilation is operated via iDrive.

Switching on and off directly

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Parked car operation" and press the controller.
4. Select "Automatic ventilation" and press the controller.
5. Select "Parked car ventilation" and press the controller.



The parked-car ventilation is switched on.

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control flashes.

Preselecting activation times

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the left to open "Climate".
3. Select "Parked car operation" and press the controller.
4. Select "Activation time" and press the controller.
5. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Timer 1" or "Timer 2".

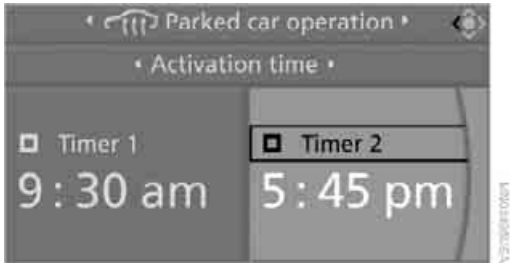
6. Select the time and press the controller. The first time setting is selected.

7. Turn the controller to make the adjustment.
8. Press the controller to apply the setting. The next setting is selected.
9. Make the remaining adjustments. After the last adjustment, the time is stored.

CarManuals2.com

Activating activation time

Move the controller to the left or right to select "Timer 1" or "Timer 2" and press the controller.



The activation time is activated.

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control lights up.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

The symbol on the display of the automatic climate control flashes when the parked car ventilation has switched on.

The parked car ventilation is only available for activation within the next 24 hours. Please reactivated it after this time.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Practical interior accessories

Integrated universal remote control*

The concept

The integrated universal remote control can replace as many as three hand-held transmitters for various remote-controlled accessories, such as garage and gate or lighting systems. The integrated universal remote control registers and stores signals from the original hand-held transmitters.

The signal of an original hand-held transmitter can be programmed on one of the three memory buttons **1**. After this, the programmed memory button **1** will operate the system in question. The LED **2** flashes to confirm transmission of the signal.

Should you sell your vehicle one day, be sure to delete the stored programs beforehand for your safety, refer to page 105.

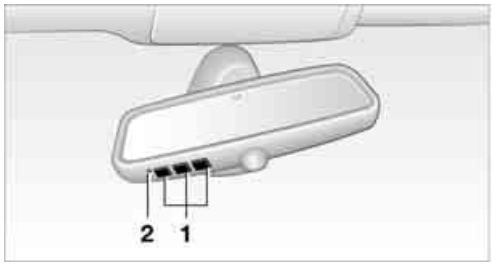
To prevent possible damage or injury, before programming or using the integrated universal remote control, always inspect the immediate area to make certain that no people, animals or objects are within the travel range of the device. Also, comply with the safety precautions of the original hand-held transmitter.◀

Checking compatibility

If you see this symbol on the packaging or in the manual supplied with the original hand-held transmitter, it is safe to assume that it is compatible with the integrated universal remote control.

If you have additional questions, please contact your BMW center or call: 1-800-355-3515.
Information is also provided on the Internet at: www.bmwusa.com or www.homelink.com.
HomeLink is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.◀

Programming



1 Memory buttons

2 LED

Fixed-code hand-held transmitters

1. Switch on ignition, refer to page 56.
2. When starting operation for the first time: Press the left and right-hand memory button **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes quickly. All stored programs are deleted.
3. Hold the original hand-held transmitter at a distance of approx. 4 in/10 cm to 12 in/ 30 cm from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the relevant system of the original hand-held transmitter used.◀
4. Simultaneously press the transmit button on the original hand-held transmitter and the desired memory button **1** on the integrated universal remote control. The LED **2** flashes slowly at first. As soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly, release both buttons. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance and repeat the step.
5. To program other original hand-held transmitters, repeat steps 3 and 4.

CarManuals2.com

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

You can operate the device when the engine is running or when the ignition is switched on.

If the device fails to function even after repeated programming, check whether the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. To do so, either read the instructions for the original hand-held transmitter or hold down the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control. If the LED **2** on the integrated universal remote control flashes rapidly for a short time and then remains lit for approx. 2 seconds, this indicates that the original hand-held transmitter uses an alternating-code system. In the case of an alternating-code system, program the memory buttons **1** as described at Alternating-code hand-held transmitters.◀

Alternating-code hand-held transmitters

To program the integrated universal remote control, consult the operating instructions for the equipment to be set. You will find information there on the possibilities for synchronization.
When programming hand-held transmitters that employ an alternating code, please observe the following supplementary instructions:

Programming will be easier with the aid of a second person.◀

1. Park your vehicle within the range of the remote-controlled device.
2. Program the integrated universal remote control as described above in the section Fixed-code hand-held transmitters.
3. Locate the button on the receiver of the device to be set, e.g. on the drive unit.
4. Press the button on the receiver of the device to be set. After step 4, you have approx. 30 seconds for step 5.
5. Press the programmed memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote control three times.

The corresponding memory button **1** is now programmed with the signal of the original hand-held transmitter.

If you have any additional questions, please contact your BMW center.◀

Deleting all stored programs

Press the left and right-hand memory button **1** for approx. 20 seconds until the LED **2** flashes quickly:
All stored programs are deleted.

Individual programs cannot be deleted.

Rememorizing individual programs

1. Hold the original handheld remote control approx. 10 to 30 cm away from the memory buttons **1**.

   The required distance between the hand-held transmitter and the memory buttons **1** depends on the relevant system of the original hand-held transmitter used.◀
2. Press the desired memory button **1** of the integrated universal remote.
3. If the LED **2** flashes slowly after approx. 20 seconds, press the command button of the original hand-held transmitter. As soon as the LED **2** flashes rapidly, release both buttons. If the LED **2** does not flash rapidly after approx. 15 seconds, alter the distance and repeat the step.

Sun blinds*

Sun blind for rear window

CarManuals2.com

Press the button on the driver's door.

Sun blinds for rear side windows

Pull the loop of the roller sun blind and hook onto bracket.

Do not open the window with the roller sun blind deployed. Otherwise, there is a risk of damage and injury at higher speeds.◀

Glove compartment

Opening

Pull the handle. The light in the glove compartment switches on.

To prevent injury in the event of an accident while the vehicle is being driven, close the glove compartment immediately after use.◀

Closing

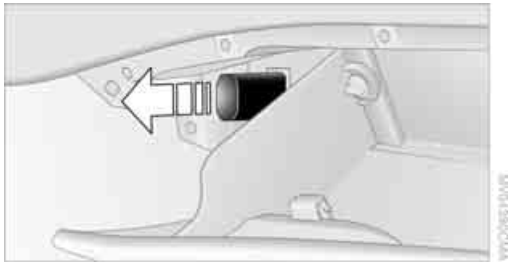
Raise the lid into the closed position.

Locking

Lock with a key.

If you only hand over the remote control without the integrated key, e.g. for valet parking, refer to page 28, the glove compartment cannot be unlocked.◀

Rechargeable flashlight



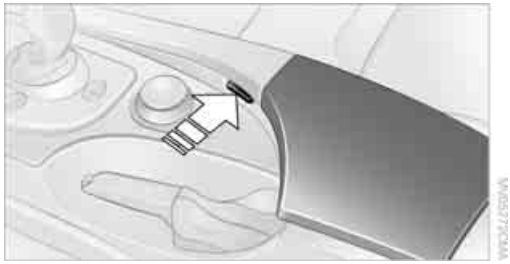
The flashlight is located on the left side of the glove compartment.
The flashlight can remain plugged in continuously. Pull the flashlight out of the socket when needed.

To avoid possibly damaging the lamp, always ensure that it is switched off before inserting it in the socket.◀

Center armrest, front

The compartment in the center armrest is divided into two sections.

Opening cover



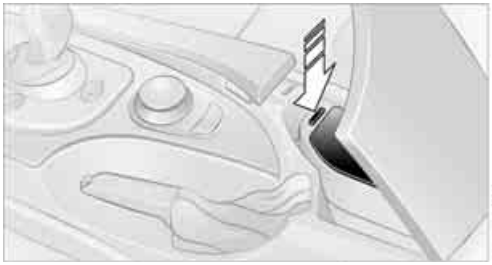
Press the button. The cover opens somewhat and can be folded upwards.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the upper section contains a compartment with a mat that can be removed for cleaning or a telephone cradle*.

CarManuals2.com

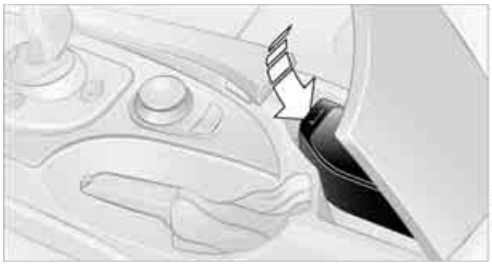
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Opening upper compartment



Press button and fold cover upward.

Accessing lower compartment



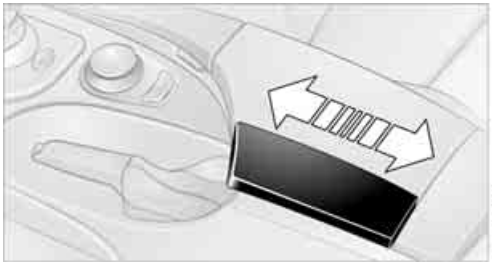
Press the button at the front and fold the upper compartment or the telephone cradle upward.

Ventilating lower compartment*

Push the slide in the lower compartment upward.

Depending on the automatic climate control setting, the temperature inside the ventilated compartment may be higher than in the rest of the interior. Should this be the case, push the slide downward to close off the ventilation.◀

Adjusting



Push the illustrated section of the center armrest into the desired position.

Connection for external audio device

You can connect an external audio device such as a CD or MP3 player and play audio tracks over the vehicle's loudspeaker system:

- ▷ AUX-In connection, refer to page 168.
- ▷ USB/audio interface*, refer to page 169.

Storage compartments

Storage compartments are located in the center console and in the rear.
Storage nets are located on the backrests of the front seats, and a net* is provided in the front passenger footwell.

Do not stow hard or sharp-edged objects in the storage nets or the net, otherwise there is an increased risk of injury in an accident.◀

CarManuals2.com

In front of gearshift lever*

Clothes hooks

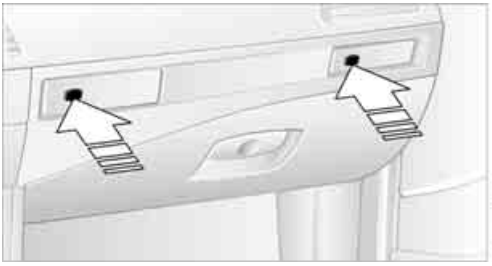
Clothes hooks are located near the grab handles in the rear.

When hanging clothing on the hooks, ensure that it will not obstruct the driver's vision. Do not hang heavy objects on the hooks. If you do so, they could cause personal injury to occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

Cup holders

Use lightweight, unbreakable containers and do not transport hot beverages. Otherwise, there is an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. Do not force containers that are too large into the cup holders, otherwise damage could result.◀

Opening



Briefly press the button.

Closing

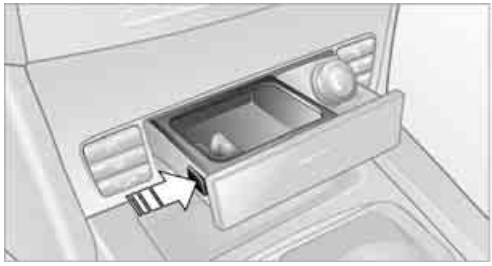
Press the cover in the center and push in the cup holder.

Ashtray, front*

Opening

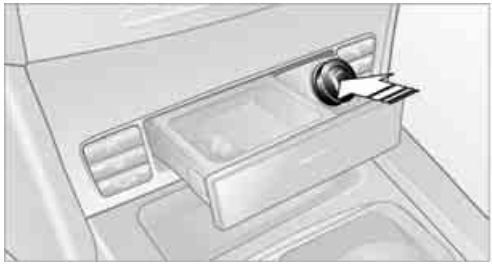
Briefly press the center of the cover.

Emptying



Press the button, refer to arrow. The ashtray rises and can be removed.

Cigarette lighter, front*



Press in the lighter with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

The lighter can be removed as soon as it pops back out.

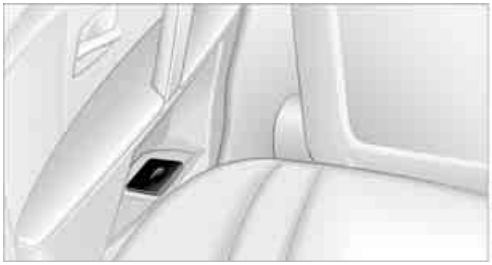
Hold or touch the hot cigarette lighter by the knob only. Holding or touching it in other areas could result in burns.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Always take along the remote control when you leave the vehicle, otherwise children could, for example, use the lighter and burn themselves.◀

Ashtray, rear*



Emptying

Press the entire cover down. The ashtray rises and can be removed.

Cigarette lighter, rear

CarManuals2.com

Refer to Cigarette lighter, front.

Connecting electrical devices

Sockets

With the engine running or the ignition switched on, the cigarette lighter socket can be used as a power outlet for hand flashlights, car vacuum cleaners, etc., with power ratings of up to approx. 200 W at 12 V. Avoid damaging the socket due to inserting plugs of different shapes or sizes. The same is true for all power outlets in the vehicle.

In front passenger footwell

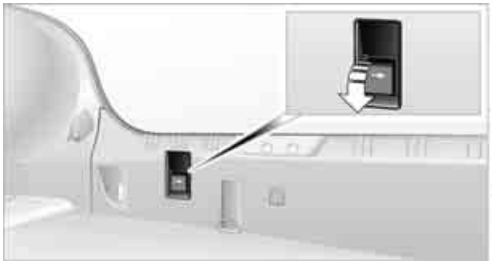
Access to socket:
Fold open the cover.

In the rear center console

Depending on the equipment, the sockets in the rear are covered with caps or equipped with a lighter. Refer to Cigarette lighter, front, page 108.

Access to socket:
Remove respective cap or lighter.

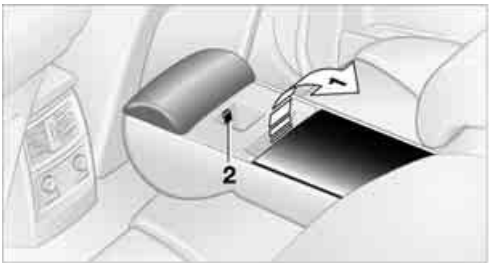
In cargo bay



Access to socket:
Fold open the cover.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Center armrest, rear



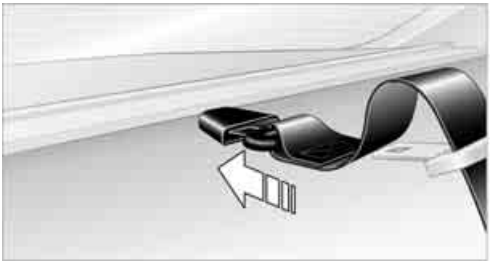
Storage tray:
Pull the cover upward, arrow **1**.

Access to cup holders:
Press button **2** and open the cover.

Through-loading system*

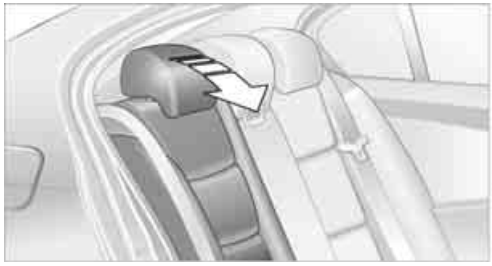
Opening

1. Open the buckle of the center safety belt in the rear and insert the latch plate at the end of the belt into the fixture on the rear window shelf.



2. Push the corresponding head restraint down as far as it will go, refer to page 45.
3. To release the rear backrest, pull the corresponding lever in the cargo bay.

4. The unlocked rear backrest moves forward slightly. Fold the backrest forward by the head restraint.



Closing

1. Fold the rear backrest into the seating position and engage.

When you return the seat to its upright position, make sure that the catch engages properly. If it is not properly engaged, transported cargo could enter the vehicle during braking or evasive maneuvers and endanger the vehicle occupants.◀

2. Release the latch plate from the bracket on the rear window shelf and insert it into the buckle of the center safety belt. Make sure the latch plate audibly engages.

The lashing eyes in the cargo bay provide you with a way to attach cargo-bay nets* or luggage straps for securing suitcases and luggage, refer to page 117.

Ski bag*

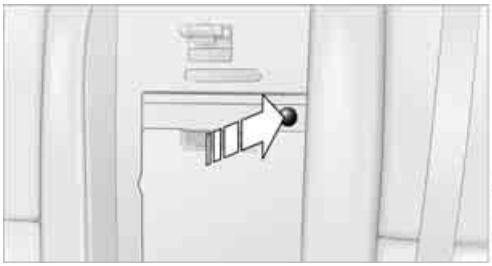
The ski bag is designed for safe, clean transport of up to 4 pairs of standard skis or up to 2 snowboards.

With the ski bag you can stow skis with a length of up to 6.9 ft/2.10 m. When skis of 6.9 ft/2.10 m in length are loaded, the ski bag will tend to contract, reducing its overall capacity.

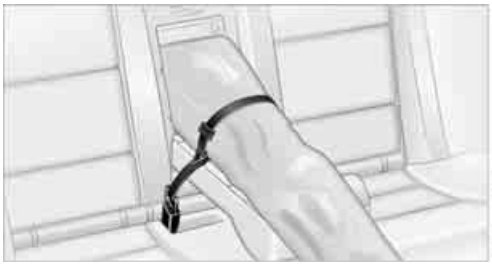
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Loading

1. Fold down the center armrest, press the button and open the cover.



2. Press the button again; the cover in the cargo bay opens. If you press the button firmly the first time, this also opens the cover in the cargo bay.
3. Extend the ski bag between the front seats and fill it. The zipper facilitates access to the stowed items and drying of the ski bag.
4. Insert the latch plate of the ski bag retaining strap into the center safety belt buckle that is marked CENTER.



Only stow clean skis in the ski bag. Wrap sharp edges to prevent damage.

Securing cargo

After loading, secure the ski bag and its contents. Tighten the retaining strap on the tensioning buckle for this purpose.

Secure the ski bag in this way. If you fail to do so, it could endanger vehicle occupants during braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

To store the ski bag, perform the above steps in reverse order.

Removing ski bag

The ski bag can be completely removed, e.g. for faster drying or to allow you to put it to other uses.

1. Pull the handle forward and pull the ski bag up and out.
2. Close the cover in the cargo bay.

Your BMW center will be glad to provide you with more detailed information on the various items of equipment.◀

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Driving tips

This section is designed to provide you with extra support by supplying information useful in dealing with specific driving and operating conditions.

Things to remember when driving

Break-in period

Moving parts need breaking-in time to adjust to each other. To ensure that your vehicle continues to provide optimized economy of operation throughout an extended service life, we request that you devote careful attention to the following section.

CarManuals2.com

Do not use the driving programs 5 and 6 during break-in, refer to Drivelogic on page 61.

Engine and differential

Always obey all official speed limits.

Up to 1,200 miles/2,000 km

Drive at changing engine and driving speeds, however do not exceed 5,500 rpm or 105 mph/170 km/h.

Avoid full-throttle operation and use of the transmission's kick-down mode during these initial miles.

From 1,200 miles/2,000 km to 3,000 miles/5,000 km

The engine and driving speed can gradually be increased up to a continuous vehicle speed of 135 mph/220 km/h. Only drive at top speed briefly, e.g. when passing.

Transmission

The function of the transmission is only at its optimized level after driving a distance of approx. 300 miles/500 km. Do not exceed engine speeds of 5,500 rpm during this time.

Tires

Due to technical factors associated with their manufacture, tires do not achieve their full traction potential until after an initial break-in period. Therefore, drive reservedly during the first 200 miles/300 km.

Brake system

Brakes require an initial break-in period of approx. 300 miles/500 km to achieve optimized contact and wear patterns between brake pads and rotors. Drive in a reserved manner during this break-in period.

Clutch

The function of the clutch is only at its optimized level after a distance driven of approx. 300 miles/500 km. With manual transmission: During this break-in period, engage the clutch gently.

Following part replacement

Observe the break-in instructions again if components mentioned above must be replaced after subsequent driving operation.

General driving notes

Closing luggage compartment lid

Operate the vehicle only when the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. Otherwise, exhaust fumes could penetrate into the passenger compartment.◀

If it is absolutely necessary to drive with the luggage compartment lid open:

1. Close all windows and the glass sunroof.
2. Increase the air volume of the automatic climate control to a high level, refer to page 99.

Hot exhaust system

As in all vehicles, extremely high temperatures are generated on the exhaust system. Do not remove the heat shields installed adjacent to it, and never apply undercoating to them. When driving, standing at idle and while parking take care to avoid possible contact between the hot exhaust system and any highly

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

flammable materials such as hay, leaves, grass, etc. Such contact could lead to a fire, and with it the risk of serious property damage as well as personal injury. Do not touch hot exhaust tail pipes. Otherwise there is a risk of burns.◀

Hydroplaning

When driving on wet or slushy roads, reduce road speed. If you do not, a wedge of water can form between tires and road surface. This phenomenon is referred to as hydroplaning, and is characterized by a partial or complete loss of contact between the tires and the road surface, ultimately undermining your ability to steer and brake the vehicle.◀

The risk of hydroplaning increases as the tread depth of the tires decreases, refer also to Minimum tire tread on page 202.

Driving through water

Do not drive through water on the road if it is deeper than 1 ft/30 cm, and then only at walking speed at the most. Otherwise, the vehicle's engine, the electrical systems and the transmission may be damaged.◀

Braking safely

Your BMW is equipped with ABS as a standard feature. In situations that require it, it is best to brake with full force. Since the vehicle maintains steering responsiveness, you can still avoid possible obstacles with a minimum of steering effort.

The pulsing of he brake pedal indicates that the ABS is controlling braking.

In certain braking situations the perforated brake rotors can cause operating noises which, however, have not effect on the performance and operating safety of the brake system.

Do not drive with your foot resting on the brake pedal. Even light but consistent pedal pressure can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

Driving in wet conditions

When roads are wet or there is heavy rain, briefly exert gentle pressure on the brake pedal every few miles. Monitor traffic conditions to ensure that this maneuver does not endanger other road users. The heat generated in this process helps dry the pads and rotors to ensure that full braking efficiency will then be available when you need it.

Hills

To prevent overheating and the resulting reduced efficiency of the brake system, drive long or steep downhill gradients in the gear in which the least braking is required. Even light but consistent pressure on the brake pedal can lead to high temperatures, brake wear and possibly even brake failure.◀

Sequential Manual Transmission: do not drive in idle or with the engine switched off, otherwise there will be no engine braking action or support of the braking force and steering.
Manual transmission: do not drive with the clutch depressed, in idle or with the engine switched off, otherwise there will be no engine braking action or support of the braking force and steering.
Never allow floor mats, carpets or any other objects to protrude into the area of movement of the pedals and impair their operation.◀

CarManuals2.com

Corrosion on brake rotors

When the vehicle is driven only occasionally, during extended periods when the vehicle is not used at all, and in operating conditions where brake applications are less frequent, there is an increased tendency for corrosion to form on rotors, while contaminants accumulate on the brake pads. This occurs because the minimum pressure which must be exerted by the pads during brake applications to clean the rotors is not reached.

Should corrosion form on the brake rotors, the brakes will tend to respond with a pulsating effect that even extended application will fail to cure.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

When vehicle is parked

Condensation forms in the air conditioner system during operation, and then exits under the vehicle. Traces of condensed water under the vehicle are therefore normal.

Before driving into a car wash

Fold in the exterior mirrors, refer to page 48, otherwise they could be damaged due to the width of the vehicle.

General information on the care and maintenance of your BMW is contained in the Caring for your vehicle brochure.

Ground clearance

Make sure that sufficient ground clearance is available. To drive down curbs, select the "Sport" program of the EDC Electronic Damping Control, refer to page 82, to keep the ground clearance as uniform as possible. Otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.◀

Cargo loading

To avoid loading the tires beyond their approved carrying capacity, never overload the vehicle. Overloading can lead to overheating and increases the rate at which damage develops inside the tires. The ultimate result can assume the form of a sudden blow-out.◀

Make sure that no fluids leak in the cargo bay; otherwise the vehicle could be damaged.◀

Determining loading limit

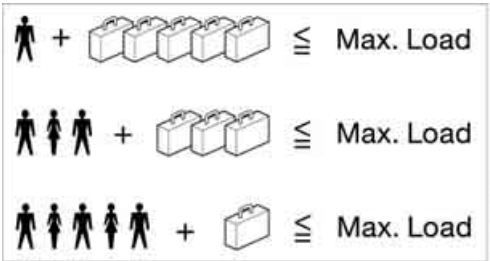
1. Locate the following statement on your vehicle's placard*:

   The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX lbs. or YYY kg, as otherwise the vehicle may be damaged and unstable driving conditions may result.◀
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX lbs. or YYY kg.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the XXX amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150-lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs.:
   1,400 lbs. minus 750 lbs. = 650 lbs.
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, part of the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult the manual for transporting a trailer to determine how this may reduce the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Load



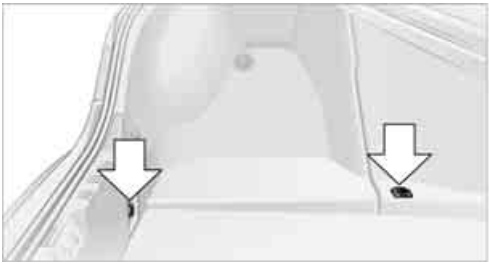
The permissible load is the total of the weight of occupants and cargo/luggage. The greater the weight of occupants, the less cargo/luggage can be transported.

Stowing cargo

CarManuals2.com

- ▷ Load heavy cargo as far forward and as low as possible, placing it directly behind the rear backrest.
- ▷ Cover sharp edges and corners.
- ▷ For very heavy cargo when the rear seat is not occupied, secure each safety belt in the opposite buckle.
- ▷ Do not pile objects higher than the top edge of the backrest.

Securing cargo



- ▷ Use the luggage net*, luggage straps, or securing straps to hold down small and lightweight luggage and cargo.
- ▷ Heavy-duty cargo straps* for securing larger and heavier objects are available at your BMW center. Four lashing eyes mounted in the cargo bay are used to secure these heavy-duty cargo straps, refer to illustration.
- ▷ Please observe the special instructions supplied with the heavy-duty cargo straps.

⚠ Position and secure the cargo as described above, so that it cannot endanger the vehicle's occupants, for example if sudden braking or evasive maneuvers are necessary.
Use only the lashing eyes to secure heavy-duty cargo straps, refer to illustration, otherwise the cargo straps could become detached or the vehicle could be damaged.
Never exceed either the approved gross vehicle weight or either of the approved axle loads, refer to page 232, as excessive loads can pose a safety hazard, and may also place you in violation of traffic safety laws.
You should never transport unsecured heavy or hard objects in the passenger compartment, as they could fly around and pose a safety hazard to the vehicle's occupants during abrupt braking or evasive maneuvers.◀

Roof-mounted luggage rack*

A special rack system is available as an option for your BMW. Please comply with the precautions included with the installation instructions.

Mounting points

The mounting points are located in the door openings.

Loading roof-mounted luggage rack

Because roof racks raise the vehicle's center of gravity when loaded, they have a major effect on its handling and steering response.
You should therefore always remember not to exceed the approved roof load capacity, the approved gross vehicle weight or the axle loads when loading the rack.

You can find the specified weights under Weights on page 232.

Distribute the roof load uniformly. The load must not be too large in area. Always stow the heaviest pieces on the bottom. Be sure that adequate clearance is maintained for raising the glass sunroof, and that objects do not project into the opening path of the luggage compartment lid.

Secure roof-mounted cargo correctly and securely to prevent it from shifting or falling off during the trip.

Drive smoothly. Avoid sudden acceleration and braking maneuvers. Take corners gently.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

BMW M5 Engineering

V10 High Output Engine

With a 305 cu in/5 liter displacement, the high-speed V10 engine generates a maximum output of 373 kW and a maximum torque of 384 lb ft/520 Nm. Its spontaneous response characteristics yield a very broad usable engine speed range. At the maximum engine speed of 8250 rpm, the flow of fuel is interrupted in order to protect the engine. Due to the powerful engine dynamics, when the vehicle is at rest, the maximum engine speed is limited to 7000 rpm.

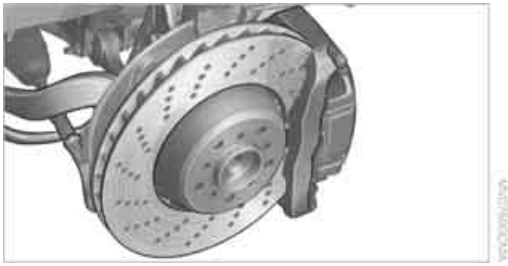
Warming up

The emissions control system causes the V10 high-output engine to have slightly rougher running characteristics during its warm-up phase.

When the engine is cold, the exhaust system has a slightly metallic undertone due to the system design.

For additional information of warming up, refer to Tachometer on page 66 and Engine oil temperature on page 67.

Compound brake



Your BMW M5 has a high-performance brake system with perforated compound brake rotors.

Due to the special structural features of these brake rotors, function noises occur during braking, but this has no effect on the performance, operating safety, and stability of the brakes.

Braking correctly

In order to keep the brake system in optimum condition, it is useful to put them under load at regular intervals in accordance with the nature of the vehicle.

Also refer to Corrosion on brake rotors on page 115.

Drive train

In your BMW M5, particular importance was attached to the direct connection of the engine to the drive system. Due to the torsionally rigid design of the drive train, the transmission of the torque is also audible, as is customary in a sports car. As a result, load shifts can be distinctly audible. This does not in any way impair the function or the service life of the components.

CarManuals2.com

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Navigation

This chapter describes how you can enter destinations and specify your route so that your navigation system guides you reliably to your destination.

CarManuals2.com

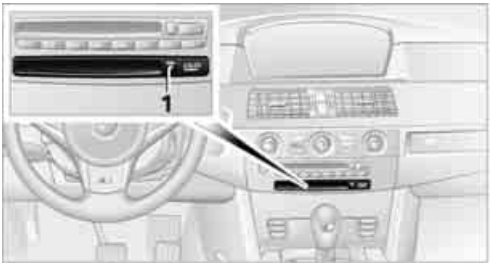
Starting navigation system*

Your navigation system can use satellites to ascertain the precise position of your vehicle and guide you reliably to any destination you enter.

Navigation DVD

The navigation system requires a special navigation DVD. The latest version is available at your BMW center.

Inserting navigation DVD



1. Insert the navigation DVD with the labeled side up. The navigation DVD is automatically pulled in.
2. Allow several seconds for the system to scan the data from the DVD.

Removing navigation DVD

1. Press ⏏ button **1**.
   The DVD emerges slightly from the drive.
2. Remove the DVD.

If the DVD is not ejected from the drive, it is possible that it is blocked. In this case a message is also shown on the Control Display.

Display in assistance window

You can display the route or the current position in the assistance window. This display remains visible even if you change to another application.

1. Move the controller to the right to enter the assistance window.

2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select the desired route view or "Current position".

4. Press the controller.

Displaying arrow view in map view*

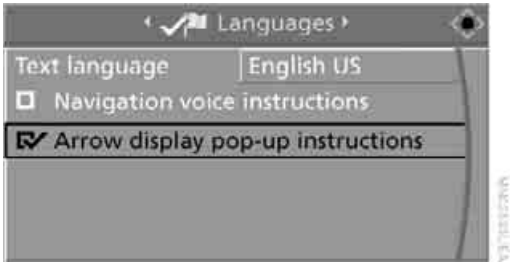
If the navigation system suggests a change of direction, the arrow view is briefly displayed.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

4. Turn the controller until "Language / Units" is selected and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Languages" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Arrow display pop-up instructions" and press the controller.



The arrow view appears in the assistance window.

CarManuals2.com

Destination entry

In entering your destination you can select from among the following options:

- ▷ Entering a destination manually, see below
- ▷ Entering destination via voice*, refer to page 127
- ▷ Selecting destination using information, refer to page 129
- ▷ Selecting destination from a list, refer to Destination list, page 130
- ▷ Selecting destination from address book, refer to page 131
- ▷ Selecting home address, refer to page 133

After selecting your destination you can proceed to start the destination guidance, refer to page 136.

You can also store a navigation destination on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons, refer to page 21.

⚠ Enter data only when the vehicle is stationary, and always give priority to the applicable traffic regulations in the event of any contradiction between traffic and road conditions and the instructions issued by the navigation system. If you do not observe this precaution, you can endanger the vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to open "Navigation".
3. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.

The Control Display shows:

- ▷ the arrow view or map view during destination guidance
- ▷ the destination list when destination guidance is switched off

Entering a destination manually

The system's word matching principle makes it easier for you to enter the names of streets or towns, refer to page 135. This allows you to enter different spellings and completes your entry automatically so that stored names can be called up quickly.

1. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Navigation" is selected and press the controller.
   "New destination" is selected.
2. Press the controller.

3. Select "Enter address" and press the controller.

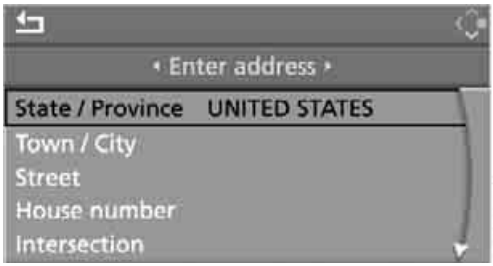
The system also supports you with the following features:

- ▷ If you do not enter a street, the system will guide you to the downtown area of a town/city.
- ▷ You can skip the entry of country and locality if the current entries should be retained for your new destination.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Selecting country

1. Select "State / Province" or the displayed country and press the controller.



   The list of available countries appears on the display.

2. Select the country of destination and press the controller.

In order to be able to start the destination guidance, at least the town/city of the destination or its zip code must be entered.

Entering destination via town/city name

1. Select "Town / City" or the displayed town/city and press the controller.
2. Select the starting letter and press controller.
   A list of all towns/cities starting with this letter appears on the Control Display.
3. To delete the letter entered if necessary:

   ▷ Delete individual numbers or letters:
   Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵ and press the controller.

   ▷ Delete all numbers or letters:
   Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵ and press and hold the controller.

4. If necessary, enter more letters.
   The list gradually grows smaller each time you enter a new letter.

   ▷ Enter blank space if necessary:
   Select the _ symbol and press the controller.

5. Change to the third field from the top if necessary. Turn the controller until the town/city name is selected from the list and press the controller.

Entering destination by zip code

1. Select "Town / City" and press the controller.
2. Enter the zip code:
   Select the desired digits and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

- Enter a blank space:
  Select the _ symbol and press the controller.
- Delete individual numbers or letters:
  Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵| and press the controller.
- Delete all numbers or letters:
  Move the controller toward the right to select ⟵| and press and hold the controller.

3. Select the zip code and press the controller.
   The corresponding destination is displayed.
4. Change into the third field from the top.
   Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

Entering street, house number and intersection

After the street you can also enter the intersection or the house number.

Entering street and intersection

1. Select "Street" or the displayed street and press the controller.
2. Enter the street.
   The street is entered exactly like the destination.

The intersection is entered in the same way as the street.

Entering a street without entering destination

You can also enter a street without entering a destination. In this case all streets of the entered country are offered for selection.

The related town/city is displayed after the street name.

If a town/city has already been entered, you can undo this entry. This may be practical if the desired street does not exist in the entered destination, because, for example, it belongs to another part of the town/city.

CarManuals2.com

1. Change to upper field.
   ⮌ The arrow is selected.

2. Turn the controller to the right until the request for the entry of a street in the country appears and press the controller.

3. Change to the second field from the top and enter the street.

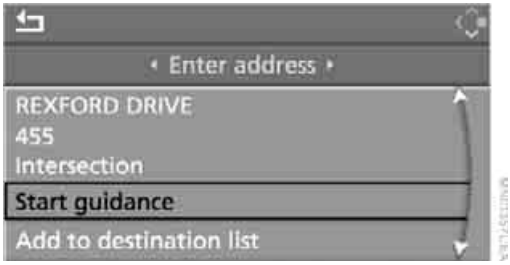
Entering house number

All house numbers stored for the street on the navigation DVD can be entered.

1. Select "House number" and press the controller.
2. Enter the house number:
   Select the desired digits and press the controller.
3. Change into the third field from the top.
   Turn the controller until the house number is selected and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Starting destination guidance with manual destination entry



▷ Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.
Destination guidance starts immediately.

▷ If the destination guidance does not need to be started immediately:
Select "Add to destination list" and press the controller.
The destination is stored in the destination list, refer to page 130.

Entering destination via voice*

You can enter a desired destination via the voice command system. When entering the destination, it is possible to change between voice command and iDrive at any time. Reactivate the voice command function for this purpose if necessary.

▷ With ›Options‹ you can have the possible commands read aloud.◀

1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. ›Enter address‹

Selecting country

1. Wait for the system to ask for the country of destination.
2. Say the name of the country of destination.

Say the name of the country of destination in the language of the voice command system.

Entering destination

The destination can be spelled or entered as an entire word.

Spelling destination

To enter the destination, spell it using the orthography of the country of destination. Pronounce the letters smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses.

1. Spell town/city name:
Say at least the first three letters of the destination. The more letters you say, the more exactly the system recognizes the town/city.

The system can suggest up to 20 destinations that match your entries. Up to 6 entries are displayed at once on the Control Display.

A destination is suggested by the system.

2. Select town/city:
   - ▷ Select highlighted town/city: ›Yes‹
   - ▷ Select other town/city: ›No‹
   - ▷ Select entry, e.g. ›Entry 3‹
   - ▷ To show other entries in the list: ›Next page‹
   - ▷ To respell the town/city: ›Repeat‹

CarManuals2.com

The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive:
Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

Entering the destination as an entire word*

CarManuals2.com

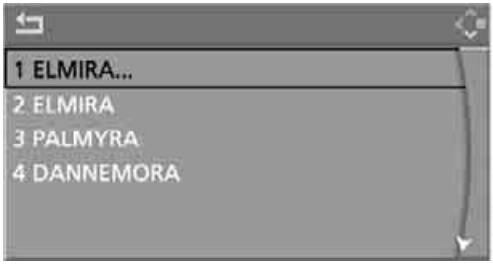
Towns/cities and streets located in the region where the language of the voice command system is spoken can be entered as an entire word.

Example: to enter a US destination as an entire word, the system language must be English.

Speak smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses.

1. Wait for the system to request the destination.
2. Say the name of the destination.

   The system can suggest up to 6 destinations that match your entries.



A destination is suggested by the system.

3. Select town/city:
   - ▷ Select highlighted town/city: ›Yes‹
   - ▷ Select other town/city: ›No‹
   - ▷ Select entry, e.g. ›Entry 3‹
   - ▷ To reenter the town/city: ›Repeat‹
   - ▷ To enter the town/city by spelling: ›Spell‹

The town/city can also be selected from the list via iDrive:
Turn the controller until the destination is selected and press the controller.

▷ Destinations that sound the same which cannot be differentiated by the system are summarized in a separate list and shown as a destination followed by three dots.

Select this entry with ›Yes‹ if necessary. Then select the desired town/city from this list.◀

Entering street and house number

The street is entered in the same way as the destination.

To enter the house number:

1. ›House number‹
2. Say the house number.

Up to 4-digit house numbers can be entered. Say the house number as individual numbers.

Starting destination guidance

›Start guidance‹

Destination guidance starts immediately.

Saving destination

The destination is added to the destination list or can be stored in the address book.

›Add to destination list‹ or
›Add to address book‹

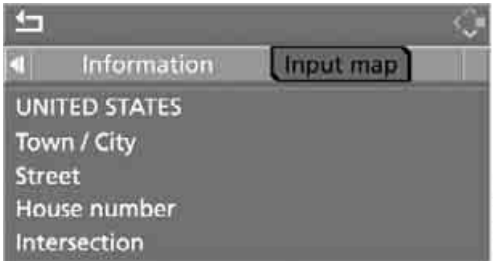
Map-guided destination selection

If you only know the location of the town/city or street of the destination, then you can enter the destination by using a map. You can use the cursor to select the destination on the map and then adopt it into the destination guidance.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
   "New destination" is selected.
2. Press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

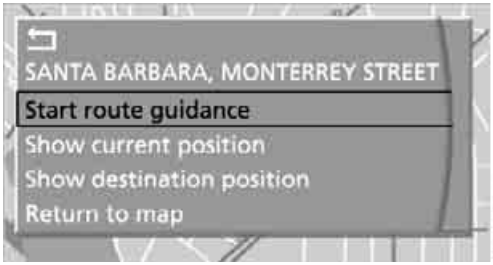
3. Select "Input map" and press the controller.



A section of a map is displayed on the Control Display:

- ▷ During destination guidance, around the current destination
- ▷ With the destination guidance deactivated, around the last destination entered

4. Select destination with cursor.
   - ▷ Changing scale: turn the controller.
   - ▷ Moving map: move the controller in the corresponding direction.
     The controller can be moved to the left, right, forward and back.
5. To adopt or store the destination in the destination guidance system, press the controller.
   The selected destination and other menu items are displayed.
6. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ "Start route guidance" starts destination guidance.
   - ▷ "Show current position" places the current position in the center of the map.
   - ▷ "Show destination position" places the current destination in the center of the map.
   - ▷ "Return to map" changes back to the "Input map".
   - ▷ Exit the menu.



7. Press the controller.

The map for the destination entry can also be displayed in the map display:
Select the symbol and press the controller.

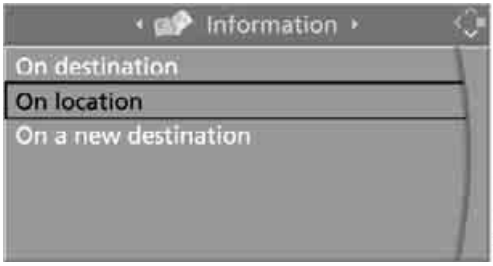
Selecting destination using information

You can obtain a display of selected destinations, e.g. hotels, sights or hospitals, and adopt them into the destination guidance.

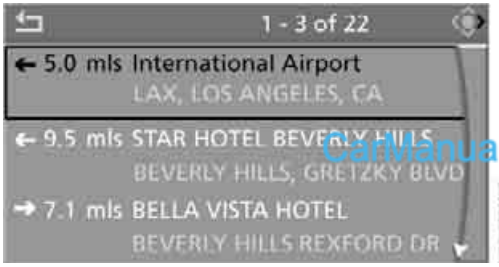
1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Select "Information" and press the controller.

3. Select location:
   - ▷ "On destination"
   - ▷ "On location"
   - ▷ "On a new destination"

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG



4. Press the controller.
5. Make your selection, e.g. "Hotels and restaurants", and press the controller.
6. Enter search criteria if necessary, e.g. the maximum distance from the current location.
7. Select "<Start search>" and press the controller.
   These destinations are displayed on the Control Display.



8. Select a destination and press the controller.

   The scope of the information and symbols is dependent on the respective navigation DVD.◀

9. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To adopt the address in the destination list and start the destination guidance: Select the ➡● symbol and press the controller.
   - ▷ To establish a telephone connection: Select the ✆ symbol and press the controller.
   - ▷ To display additional destinations: Select the ▶◀ symbol and press the controller.
   - ▷ To start a new search: Select the 🔍 symbol and press the controller.

To exit the menu:
↩ Select the arrow and press the controller.

Symbols in map view

If, for example, you have selected the category Hotels, the hotels are shown on the map as symbols.

To hide the symbols in the map view:

1. Select the symbol and press the controller.

2. Select "Hide map icons" and press the controller.

The symbols are hidden.

To display the symbols:
Select "Show map icons" and press the controller.

To exit the menu:
↩ Select the arrow and press the controller.

Destination list

The last 20 entered destinations are shown in the destination list. You can display these destinations and adopt them in the destination guidance system.
For example, to plan a longer route, you can store all destinations you want to drive to in advance in the destination list, refer to Entering a destination manually on page 124.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Select "Navigation" and press the controller.

The last destination entered is the first item in the destination list.

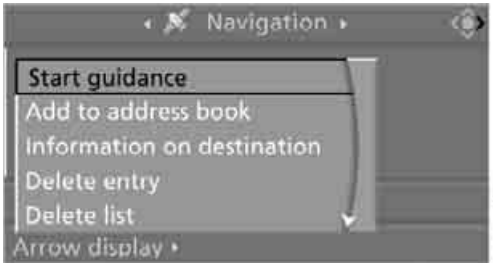
➡● This symbol indicates the current destination during destination guide.

To display additional destinations from the destination list:
turn the controller.

Applying destination in destination guidance system

1. Select the desired destination and press the controller.
2. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com



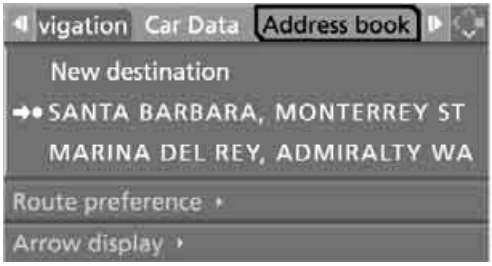
Editing destination list

1. Select the desired destination in the destination list and press the controller.
2. The selected destination can be edited:
   - ▷ Store entry:
     Select "Add to address book".
   - ▷ Display information on destination:
     Select "Information on destination".
   - ▷ Delete entry:
     Select "Delete entry".
   - ▷ Delete all entries:
     Select "Delete list". The destination guidance is switched off.
   - ▷ Change entry:
     Select "Edit". For operation, refer to Entering destination via town/city name, page 125.
3. Press the controller.

Address book

Opening address book

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

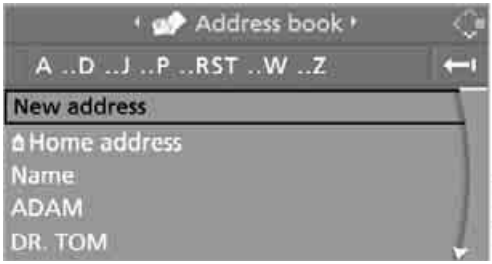


Select "Address book" and press the controller.

Storing destinations in address book

You can store approx. 100 destinations in the address book.

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select "New address" and press the controller.



3. Select "Enter address" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

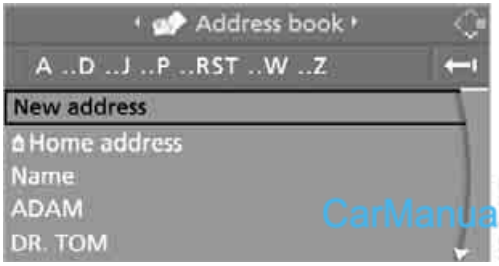
4. Enter name and address, also refer to Entering a destination manually, page 124.
5. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.
   The entry is stored in the address book.

You can also store a destination from the destination list in the address book, refer to page 130.

Storing current position*

The current position can be adopted into the address book.

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top.
   Turn the controller until "New address" is selected and press the controller.

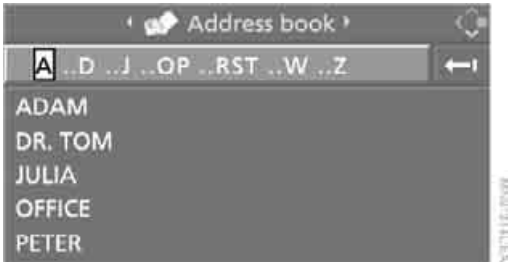


3. Select "Use current location as address" and press the controller.
   The name given can be changed. For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 124.
4. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

You can also enter your current position into the address book if you have left the sector covered by the navigation DVD. In this case, you must enter a name.

Selecting destinations from address book

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
   The stored entries appear on the Control Display.



2. Select the entry and press the controller.

To start the destination guidance:
Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

Changing destinations from address book

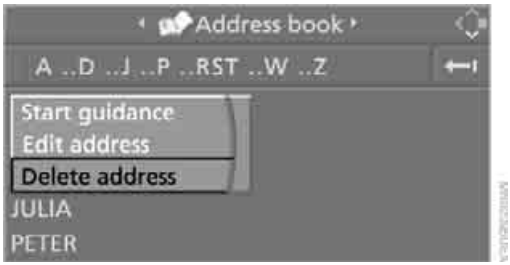
1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select the entry and press the controller.
3. Select "Edit address" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

4. Change entry.
For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 124.
5. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

Deleting individual destinations from address book

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Select the entry and press the controller.
3. Select "Delete address" and press the controller.



4. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Deleting all destinations from address book

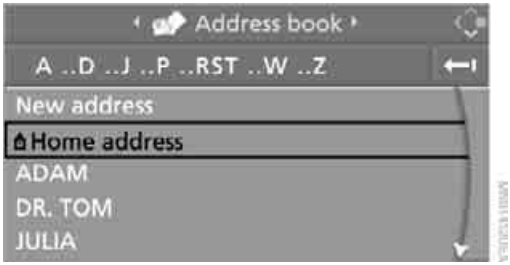
1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Vehicle / Tires" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Delete data" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Delete address book" and press the controller.
7. Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Storing home address

You can store your current position or the current destination as the home address in the address book. This entry occupies the second position in the address book.

1. Select "Address book" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Home address" is selected and press the controller.



3. Select "Use current location as address", or "Save current destination" during the destination guidance, and press the controller.
4. Select "Store in address book" and press the controller.

Adopting home address as destination

1. Select "Home address" and press the controller.
2. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.

Changing home address

1. Select "Home address" and press the controller.
2. Select "Edit address" and press the controller. For operation, refer to Entering a destination manually, page 124.

CarManuals2.com

Selecting route

You can influence the calculated route by choosing certain route criteria. You can change the route criteria as often as you like while entering the destination and whenever the destination guidance is active.

The route is planned according to fixed rules. The type of road is taken into account, e.g. whether it is a highway or a winding road. The road types are stored on the navigation DVD. As a result, the routes recommended by the navigation system may not always be the same ones that you would choose based on personal experience.

Changing route criteria

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Route preference" is selected and press the controller.

The various criteria are listed on the Control Display.

3. Select a route criterion for the route:
   - ▷ "With highways"
     Freeways and major traffic arteries are given priority
   - ▷ "Avoid highways"
     Freeways are avoided where possible
   - ▷ "Fast route"
     The short traveling time, being a combination of the shortest possible route and the fastest roads
   - ▷ "Short route"
     Short route, irrespective of how fast or slow progress will be
4. Press the controller.

The route criterion is selected.

5. If necessary, select an additional route criterion and then press the controller:
   - ▷ "Dynamic route"*
     Automatic changing of the route in case of traffic obstructions. Depending on road type and the kind and extent of the traffic obstruction, the route can also be calculated so that it passes through the traffic obstruction.
   - ▷ "Avoid tollroads"
     Tollroads are avoided where possible.
   - ▷ "Avoid ferries"
     Ferries are avoided where possible.

CarManuals2.com

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

The route criteria can also be changed in the arrow or map view:

1. Select the symbol for the route criterion and press the controller.
2. Select a route criterion and press the controller.

▷ If the route criteria "Avoid highways", "Avoid tollroads" or "Avoid ferries" are selected, the calculation time for the route can increase considerably.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Word matching principle

The system supports the word matching principle to make it easier for you to enter the names of streets or towns. The system runs ongoing checks, comparing your destination entries with the data stored on the navigation DVD as the basis for instant response. The user benefits include:

CarManuals2.com

- ▷ Names of specific locations can also vary from the official versions if you are using a spelling that is customary in another country.

  Example:

  Instead of "München", you can also enter the English spelling "Munich" or the Italian spelling "Monaco".
- ▷ When you are entering the names of towns and streets the system will complete them automatically as soon as enough letters are available to ensure unambiguous identification.
- ▷ The system only accepts name entries beginning with letters that are stored on the navigation DVD. The system will not accept non existent names and addresses.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Destination guidance

Starting destination guidance

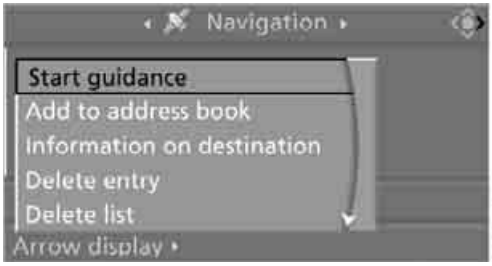
CarManuals2.com

Via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Navigation" is selected and press the controller.
2. Select a destination from the destination list and press the controller or enter a new destination, refer to page 124.

3. Select "Start guidance" and press the controller.



After the route has been calculated, destination guidance is indicated by arrows or a map display on the Control Display.

The destination guidance can also be started in the arrow or map view:
Select the symbol and press the controller.

During destination guidance, you can operate other equipment via iDrive at any time. You will be punctually notified of a change of direction by spoken instructions and the display of the direction arrow.

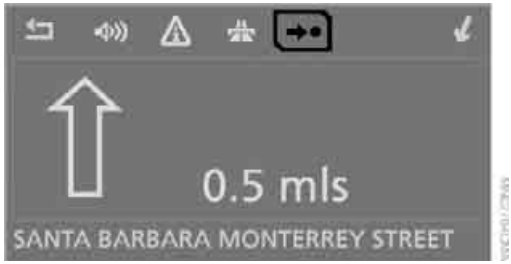
With programmable memory/ direct selection buttons

Press the 1 ... 6 button on which the desired destination is stored. Also refer to page 22.

Destination guidance, terminating/continuing

In arrow or map display

Select the symbol and press the controller.



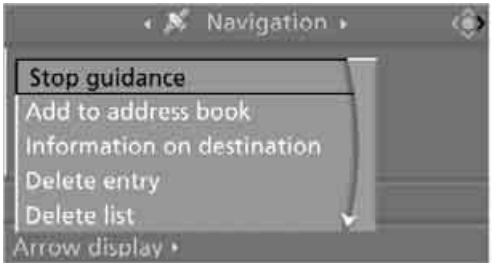
In destination list

This symbol indicates the current destination.

1. Select the current destination and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

2. Select "Zielführung beenden" and press the controller.



When you park the vehicle before reaching the entered destination, the following question is displayed before beginning the next trip: "Continue guidance to destination?".

The destination guidance starts automatically after a short time.

To start the destination guidance:
Select "Yes" and press the controller.

Displaying route

You have the option of displaying various views of the route during destination guidance.

CarManuals2.com

▷ From another menu, you can change directly to the screen last displayed, refer to Comfort opening of menu items, page 18.◀

Displaying arrow display

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until "Arrow display" is selected and press the controller.

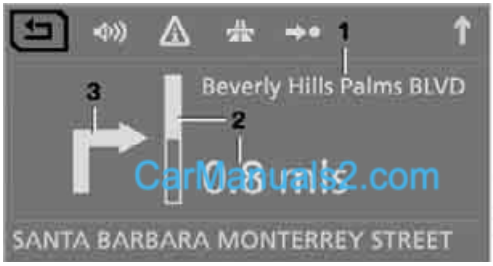
The arrow display is shown.

1 Switching voice instructions on/off
2 Manually displaying traffic information*
3 Selecting route criteria
4 Starting/ending destination guidance
5 Arrow to destination from a bird's eye view
6 Distance to the next change of direction
7 Current position
8 Direction of travel
   - ▷ Outline arrow:
     Destination guidance on the calculated route.
   - ▷ Solid arrow:
     Arrow shows the route to be calculated from a bird's eye view when the vehicle is not located in an area contained on the navigation DVD, e.g. in a parking structure.

Depending on the equipment, the estimated time of arrival and the distance to the destination are displayed in the top or bottom line of the Control Display.

Before a change in direction, the representation of the arrow changes.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG



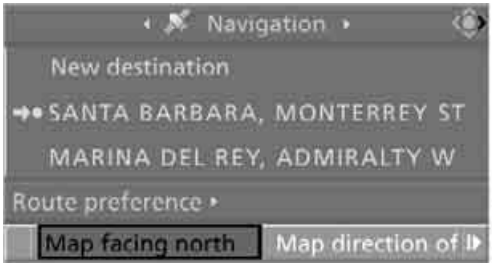
1 Street name for change of direction
2 Distance up to change of direction
3 Change of direction

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Displaying map view

You can have your current position displayed on a map. After starting the destination guidance, the planned route is shown on the map.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until the desired map view is selected:
   - ▷ "Map facing north"
   - ▷ "Map direction of travel"
   - ▷ "Perspective"



3. Press the controller.

1 Switching voice instructions on/off
2 Starting/ending destination guidance
3 Map-guided destination selection
4 Displaying the menu in which the information last selected can be displayed/hidden, refer to Selecting destination via information on page 129
5 Changing map display
   - ▷ "Map facing north"
   - ▷ "Map direction of travel"
   - ▷ "Perspective"
6 Changing route criteria
7 Manually displaying traffic information*
8 Arrow to destination from a bird's eye view

The estimated time of arrival and the distance to the destination are shown in the bottom line of the Control Display.

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

At scales of less than 250 miles/500 km, you have the option of deciding whether to orient the map to north or toward your current direction of travel. At scales of 250 miles/500 km or greater, the map always points toward north.

Changing map display

Select the corresponding symbol and press the controller.
The next map display is displayed.

Changing scale

Turn the controller to adjust the scale.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Displaying streets and towns/cities of route

You can have the roads and towns along the route displayed during destination guidance.

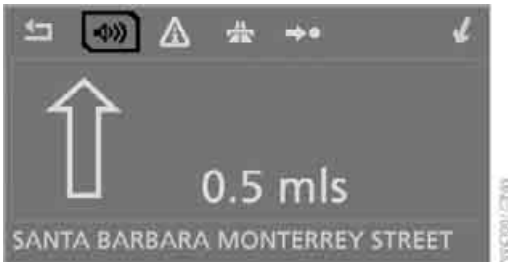
The distances remaining to be traveled on each individual road are also displayed.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "Route list" is selected and press the controller.

To exit the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Destination guidance via voice instructions

Switching voice instructions on/off

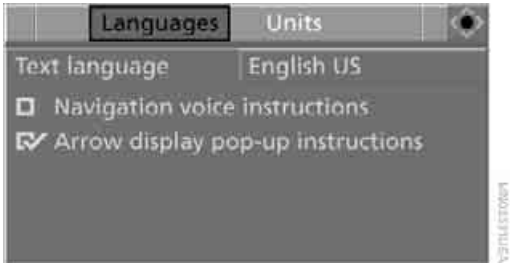


During destination guidance, voice instructions can be switched on or off in the arrow or map view:
Select the symbol and press the controller.

To switch the voice instructions on and off at any time:

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "Language / Units" is selected and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Languages" is selected and press the controller.



6. Select "Navigation voice instructions" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

The voice instructions are switched on.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use*.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Repeating and canceling voice instructions

With the programmable button on the steering wheel you can also make the following settings, refer to page 50:

▷ Repeat the voice instruction:
Press button.

▷ Switch voice instructions on/off:
Press button longer.

Setting volume of voice instructions

The volume can only be adjusted while a voice instruction is being output.

1. Repeat the last voice instruction, if necessary.
2. Turn the knob during the voice instruction to select the desired volume.

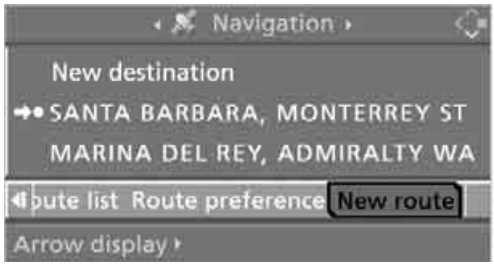
This volume is independent of the volume of the audio sources.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Bypassing route sections

During destination guidance, you can revise the navigation system's route recommendations to avoid particular stretches of road. Enter the number of miles/kilometers that you want to travel before returning to the original route.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the third field from the top. Turn the controller until "New route" is selected and press the controller.



3. Turn the controller to enter the desired number and press the controller.

The route is recalculated.

To exit from the menu without changing the route:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Traffic information*

In many congested areas, you can receive traffic information transmitted by radio stations. The traffic conditions are monitored by traffic management centers and the traffic information is periodically updated.
During destination guidance, the traffic information relevant to your planned route is automatically displayed. Whether destination guidance is active or not, you can have the traffic information displayed in the map view or in the traffic info list.

Switching reception of traffic information on/off

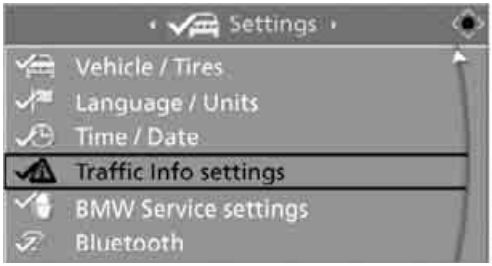
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.

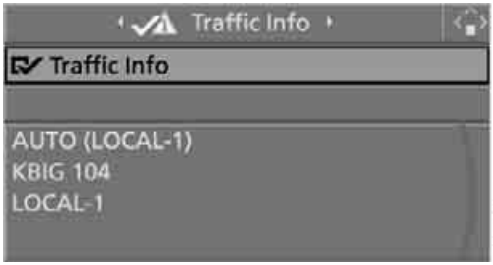
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "Traffic Info settings" is selected and press the controller.



5. Select "Traffic Info" and press the controller.



The traffic information can be received and displayed.

"AUTO": automatic selection of the Traffic Info station with the strongest reception.

Depending on the station, either the station name, frequency, local number or other information is displayed.◀

Manually displaying traffic information

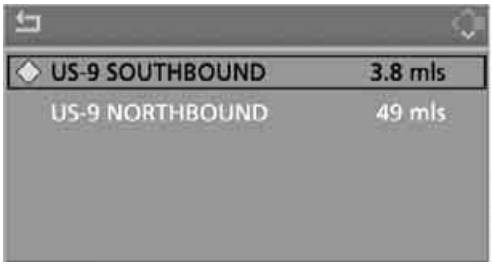
During destination guidance

During destination guidance, traffic information can be displayed in the arrow or map view.

If the symbol is shown with a red border, traffic information is available for the planned route.

Select the symbol and press the controller.

During destination guidance, the traffic information on the planned route is marked with a yellow diamond.



First the traffic information along the planned route is shown sorted according to the distance to the current vehicle position.

With destination guidance switched off

1. Open the start menu.
2. Move the controller to the right to open "Navigation".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

3. Select "Traffic Info" and press the controller.

First the traffic information along the planned route is shown sorted according to the distance to the current vehicle position.

Depiction of traffic information in map view

The traffic information symbols are shown in the map view up to a scale of 100 miles/200 km.

The section of the route affected by a traffic report as well as the number for the type of incident are displayed and hidden. This occurs as a function of the scale selected.

Displaying detailed traffic information

Select a traffic information item from the list and press the controller.

To exit from the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

Symbols for traffic information

Traffic event with map scales greater than 5 miles/10 km, arrow points in the direction of travel concerned.

Several traffic events have been received. Select a smaller scale to display these individually.

Traffic light failure

Roadwork

General traffic obstruction
Transport of hazardous load
Vehicle on wrong carriage way

Danger

Low clearance

No parking

Fog

Heavy rain

Slippery road

Cross winds

Smog

Road close

Slow traffic

Traffic back up

Stopped traffic

Icy roads

Uneven surface

Accident

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Lane closure

Delay

Police checkpoint

Slow traffic or other event

Stop-and-go traffic

Stopped traffic

Traffic event in both directions of travel

Traffic information during destination guidance

System response will vary depending on whether or not "Dynamic route" is selected.

Displaying traffic obstructions

If a traffic obstruction is reported to the navigation system and "Dynamic route" is not selected, you will be provided with certain information from a distance of approx. 25 miles/ 40 km, e.g. the length of the traffic jam.
The last possible junction will be displayed shortly before this.

This information is also displayed if you have called up a different application on the Control Display.

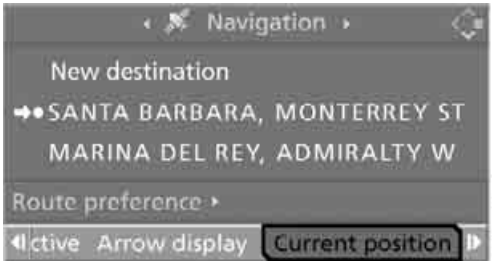
Dynamic route planning

When "Dynamic route" is selected, the route will be changed automatically in the event of a traffic obstruction. The system does not point out traffic obstructions along the original route. Depending on road type and the kind and extent of the traffic obstruction, the calculated route may lead through the traffic obstruction.

Displaying current position

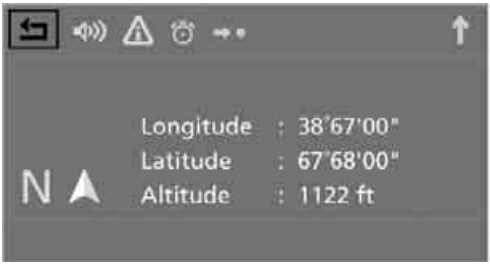
You can have your current position displayed even when the destination guidance is switched off.

1. Select "Navigation" and press the controller.
2. Change into the fourth field from the top. Turn the controller until "Current position" is selected and press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

The current position of your BMW is displayed.



If the navigation system is unable to identify a town/city, your current map coordinates will appear.

To exit the menu:

Select the arrow and press the controller.

You can also have the current position displayed on a map, refer to page 138.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

What to do if ...

What to do if ...

- a navigation DVD is inserted, but an instruction to insert the DVD appears on the Control Display?
  The navigation DVD may not be the correct DVD for the navigation system. This information is indicated on the DVD label.
- you request the current position of your vehicle, but do not receive a precise display?
  The system is unable to receive enough GPS signals at your current position due to obstructions, your position is not yet available on your navigation DVD, or the system is in the process of calculating your position. Reception is best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.
- the destination guidance does not accept a destination?
  The data of the destination is not stored on the navigation DVD that is loaded. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- the destination guidance does not accept an address without the street name?
  On the navigation DVD, no downtown area can be determined for the city or town entered. Enter any street, or a destination such as the railway station in the selected town, and then start the destination guidance.
- you want to enter a destination for the destination guidance, but it is not possible to select the letters for your desired entry?
  The data of the destination is not stored on the navigation DVD that is loaded. In this case, the system will not offer you any letters to choose from. Select a destination that is as close as possible to the original.
- the system stops furnishing directions on which way to turn as you approach intersections?
  You are driving in an area that has not yet been completely recorded on the navigation DVD. Instead of an arrow indicating a turn, you will see an arrow which indicates the general direction of your planned route. Or you have left the recommended route and the system requires a few seconds to calculate a new recommended route.
- the navigation system does not react to entries?
  If the battery was disconnected, it takes about 10 minutes before the system is once again operational.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Entertainment

Operation of the radio, CD and external audio devices, as well as their tone settings are described in this chapter.

On/off and tone

The following audio sources have shared controls and setting options:

- Professional* radio or Business radio
- CD player
- CD changer*

Controls

The audio sources can be operated using:

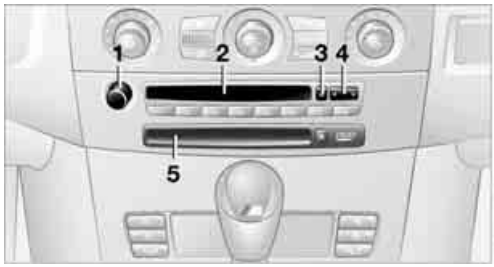
- Buttons in the area of the CD player
- iDrive
- Buttons on steering wheel, refer to page 11
- Programmable memory/direct selection buttons, refer to page 21

Buttons in area of CD player

The layout of the buttons can vary depending on your vehicle's equipment.

One drive:

Two drives:



1 Entertainment sound output on/off, volume
   - Press: switch on/off.
     When the system is switched on, the most recently selected radio station or CD track is played.
   - Turn: adjust volume.
2 Drive for audio CDs
3 Eject CD
4 Station scan/track search
   - Change radio station.
   - Select track for CD player and CD changer.
5 Drive for navigation DVDs

Operation via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

You have the following choices:

- ▷ "FM" and "AM": radio reception
- ▷ "WB": Weather Band station
- ▷ "SAT": satellite radio
- ▷ "CD": CD player or CD changer
- ▷ "AUX": AUX-In connection
- ▷ USB/audio interface*
- ▷ "Set": depending on the audio source, other adjustments can be made, e.g. with the radio: update station with strongest reception, store station, tone control, sample stations.

▷ From another menu, you can change directly to the screen last displayed, refer to Comfort opening of menu items, page 18.◀

From radio readiness, the selected audio source is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Switching on/off

To switch the Entertainment sound output on and off:
CarManuals2.com
Press knob **1** next to the CD player.

This symbol on the Control Display indicates that sound output is switched off.

For a single drive, the sound output is available for approx. 20 minutes with the ignition switched off.
Switch on the sound output again for this purpose.

Adjusting volume

Turn knob **1** next to the CD player until the desired volume is set.

You can also adjust the volume with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

From radio readiness, the setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Tone control

You can alter various tone settings, e.g. treble and bass, or the speed-dependent volume increase.
The tone settings are set for all audio sources at once.

From radio readiness, the settings are stored for the remote control currently in use.

Changing tone settings

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Select "Audio" and press the controller.

The tone settings can also be selected when you have opened "Entertainment" in the start menu:
Select "Set" and then "Tone", and press the controller.

Treble and bass

1. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Treble / Bass" is selected and press the controller.

2. Move the controller to the left or right to select "Treble" or "Bass".

3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

Balance and fader

You can adjust the volume distribution in the same manner as "Treble / Bass".

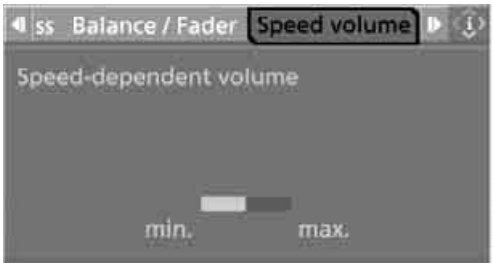
▷ "Balance": left/right volume distribution

▷ "Fader": front/rear volume distribution

Speed-dependent volume control

The speed-dependent volume control automatically increases the volume with increasing speed. You can set various stages for the increase in volume.

1. Select "Speed volume" and press the controller.



2. Turn the controller:
The adjustment is applied; the field can be changed.

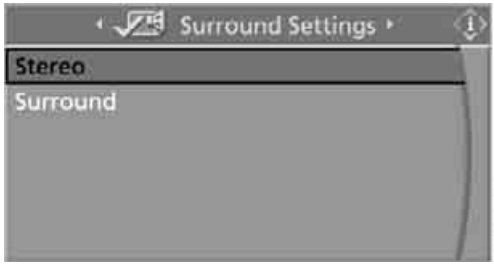
CarManuals2.com

Individual high-end sound system*

You can choose between Stereo and Surround.

1. Select "Surround Settings" and press the controller.

2. Select "Stereo" or "Surround".



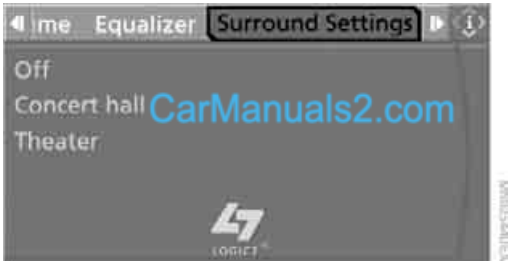
3. Press the controller.
The spatial sound effect is activated.

Professional LOGIC7 HiFi System*

You can select a spatial sound effect that improves the spatial acoustics in all frequency ranges.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

1. Select "Surround Settings" and press the controller.



2. Select "Concert hall" or "Theater".

3. Press the controller.
   LOGIC7 spatial sound is switched on.

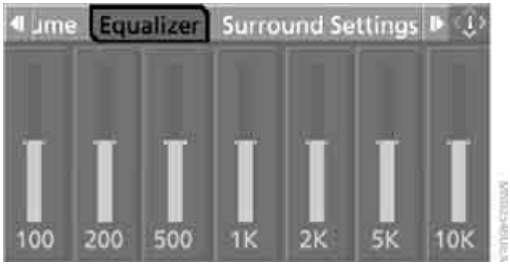
To cancel the spatial sound effect:
Select "Off" and press the controller.

LOGIC7 and the LOGIC7 logo are registered trade marks of Lexicon, Inc., a company of the Harman International Group.

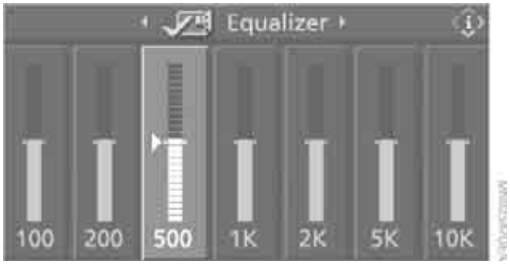
Equalizer*

You can set individual sound frequency ranges.

1. Select "Equalizer" and press the controller.



2. Move the controller to the left or right to select the desired frequency range.



3. Turn the controller until the desired setting is selected.

Resetting tone settings

You can reset all tone settings to the default settings.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Select "Audio" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Reset" is selected and press the controller.

With two drives: select "Yes".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Radio

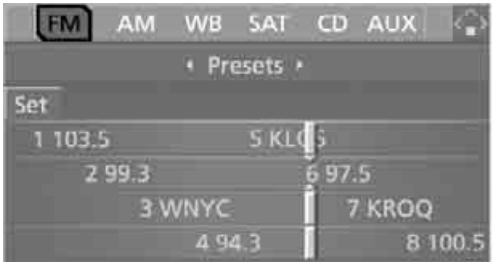
Your radio provides reception of the FM and AM wavebands.

Listening to radio

Press the knob if the sound output is switched off.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "FM" or "AM" is selected.



4. Press the controller.

Stations are shown on the Control Display on the basis of various selection criteria, e.g. "Presets".

If "Autostore" does not display any stations or if the stations displayed can no longer be received, to update the station with the strongest signal, refer to page 154.

Changing stations

Turn the controller.

In addition to the stations currently displayed, you can have stations with another selection criterion displayed.

Professional radio*

You can choose from the following selection criteria:

- ▷ "All stations":
  Stations that can currently be received in the "FM" waveband.
- ▷ "Autostore":
  The stations with the strongest received signals in the "AM" waveband.
- ▷ "Presets":
  Stations you have previously stored, refer to page 154.
- ▷ "Manual":
  To set stations that can be received in addition to those displayed, refer to Selecting frequency manually on page 153.

Business radio

You can choose from the following selection criteria:

- ▷ "Autostore":
  For the Station with the strongest signal, refer to page 154.
- ▷ "Presets":
  Stations you have previously stored, refer to page 154.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

▷ "Manual":
To set stations that can be received in addition to those displayed, refer to Selecting frequency manually.

Changing selection criteria

CarManuals2.com

In addition to the stations currently displayed, you can have stations with another selection criterion displayed.

You can choose from the following selection criteria:

▷ "All stations":
Stations that can currently be received in the "FM" waveband.

▷ "Autostore":
The stations with the strongest received signals in the "AM" waveband.

▷ "Presets":
Stations you have previously stored, refer to page 154.

▷ "Manual":
To set stations that can be received in addition to those displayed, refer to Selecting frequency manually.

1. Change into the second field from the top.
2. Turn the controller until the desired selection criterion is selected and press the controller.

Buttons next to CD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction.
The system changes to the next displayed station.
You can also change stations with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

Sampling stations, scan

The system automatically plays a brief sample from each of the stations on the current waveband.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
   "Set" is selected.
2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

The stations are sampled.

To end sampling:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

This cancels sampling of the stations, and the radio remains on the current station.

Buttons next to CD player

To sample the stations, press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

To stop scanning, press the button again.

Selecting frequency manually

With "Manual" you can select stations that are received in addition to those displayed.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Change into the second field from the top.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

3. Select "Manual" and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller to set a certain frequency.

Updating stations with best reception

Radio Professional on "AM" and Radio Business:
If you are on a longer journey and leave the transmission range of the stations originally set, you can update the list of stations with the best reception.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Change into the second field from the top.
3. Select "Autostore" and press the controller. "Set" is selected.

4. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.

5. Select "Autostore" and press the controller.

The display of the stations with the best reception is updated. The frequencies of the stations are displayed.

Storing stations

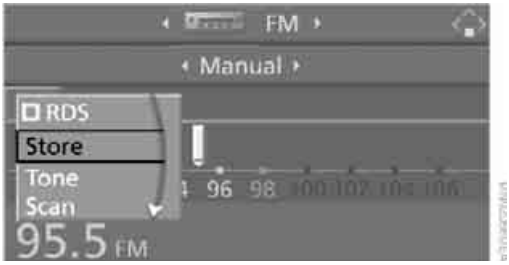
Via iDrive

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.
2. Change into the second field from the top. Turn the controller until the desired selection criterion is selected and press the controller.
3. Select the desired frequency or station. "Set" is selected.

4. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

5. Select "Store" and press the controller.



"Presets" is displayed.

6. Turn the controller until the desired memory position is selected.
7. Press the controller.
The station is stored.

The stations of the last selection criterion are displayed once again after a short time.

From radio readiness, the stations are stored for the remote control currently in use.

With programmable memory/ direct selection buttons

You can also store a station on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons, also refer to page 21.

1. Select a station.
2. 1 ... 6 Press and hold desired button.

Changing a memory position

1. Select "Presets" and press the controller.
2. Select the desired station.
"Set" is selected.
3. Press the controller.
Other menu items are displayed.

CarManuals2.com

4. Select "Store" and press the controller.

5. Turn the controller until the desired memory position is selected.
The number of the memory position appears beside the name or frequency of the station.
6. Press the controller.
The station is stored.

RDS Radio Data System

In the FM frequency range, additional information is transmitted via RDS. If the reception conditions are good, the station names are shown on the Control Display. If the reception is weak or disrupted, it can take some time before the station names are displayed.

Switching RDS on/off*

1. Select "FM" and press the controller.
"Set" is selected.
2. Press the controller.
Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "RDS" and press the controller.

☑ RDS is activated.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Automatically sorting stations*

For the "All stations" selection criterion, you can set whether the most frequently used stations are displayed at the beginning.

1. Select "All stations" and press the controller.
   "Set" is selected.
2. Select "Favorites" and press the controller.

The most frequently used stations are shown at the beginning.

Weather news flashes*

Weather Radio is a service of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) of the US Department of Trade. Weather news flashes are repeated every 4 to 6 minutes and are routinely updated at intervals of 1 to 3 hours, and more often when necessary. Most stations operate 24 hours a day. In case of a storm, the National Weather Service interrupts the routine weather news and transmits special warning messages instead. If you have a question about NOAA Weather Radio, please contact the nearest office of the National Weather Service. Details are also provided on the Internet at www.nws.noaa.gov.

Calling up weather news flashes

1. Select "WB" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

2. Select a station.

The station for weather news flashes may be unavailable in some regions.

High Definition Radio*

Many stations transmit both analog and digital signals. You can receive these stations digitally and with improved sound quality.

A digital radio network must be available in order to receive digital stations

Activating/deactivating digital radio reception

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Select "Audio" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field. Turn the controller until "HD radio" is selected and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

6. Select "Off" and press the controller.

■ The reception of digital stations is activated.

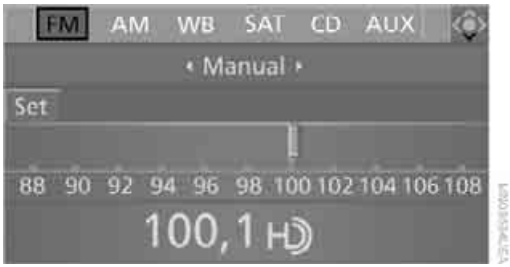
HD This symbol is displayed when a station is being received digitally.

With some stations the digital signals are not transmitted simultaneously with the analog signals. If you are in an area in which the selected station is not continuously received digitally, playback changes between analog and digital reception. This can result in repetitions or interruptions. In this case it may be advisable to deactivate digital radio reception.

Selecting programs of a digital station*

Some stations transmit several programs.
To select one of these programs:

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.



2. Select "Manual" and press the controller.
3. Select a station that is received digitally.
   HD This symbol is displayed when a station is being received digitally.
4. ◄ ► Switch to the next program of the digital station with the buttons on the radio or the steering wheel.

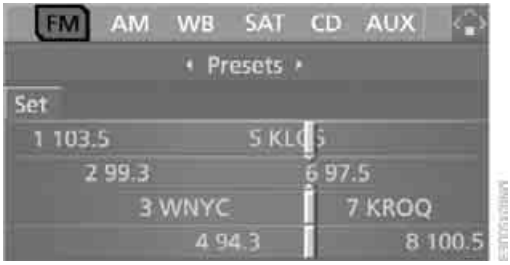
CarManuals2.com

You can store a station, refer to page 154.

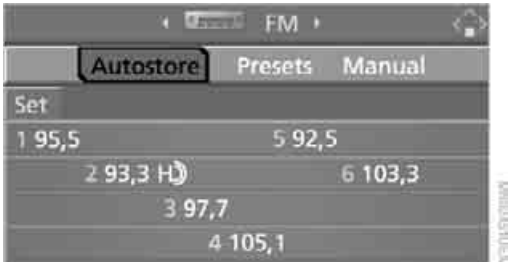
Updating stations offering digital reception

If you are on a longer journey and leave the transmission range of the stations originally set, you can update the list of stations with the best reception.

1. Select "FM" or "AM" and press the controller.



2. Change into the second field from the top.
3. Select "Autostore" and press the controller.



4. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
5. Select "Autostore HD" and press the controller.

The display of the stations offering digital reception is updated. This can take up to 2 minutes.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Displaying additional information

With the digital stations, additional information on the current track is displayed, e.g. the name of the artist.

1. Select a station and press the controller.
2. Select "Details" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

The information is displayed.

If a digital station is received again when the station is changed, the additional information will be displayed again following a brief interruption.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Satellite radio*

You can receive over 100 different channels with high sound quality.

The channels are offered to you in predefined packages. To receive the channels of your choice, you must have this package enabled.

CarManuals2.com

With this new technology the signal may fail, causing interruptions in reception.◀

Enabling or disabling channels

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Select "SAT".

4. Press the controller.

The channels are displayed.
✔ These channels are enabled.

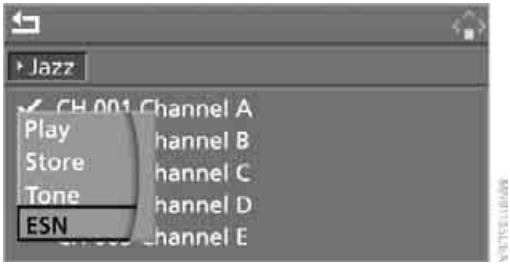
Enabling

1. Select a channel that has not yet been enabled and press the controller.
   A telephone number and the electronic serial number, ESN, are displayed.

   The electronic serial number is required for enabling or disabling.◀
2. To enable the channels:
   Dial the phone number.

Disabling

1. Select an enabled channel and press the controller.



2. Select "ESN" and press the controller.
   The electronic serial number, ESN, is displayed.

   The electronic serial number is required for disabling.◀
3. To disable the channels:
   Dial the phone number.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Selecting and storing channel

1. Select "SAT" and press the controller.

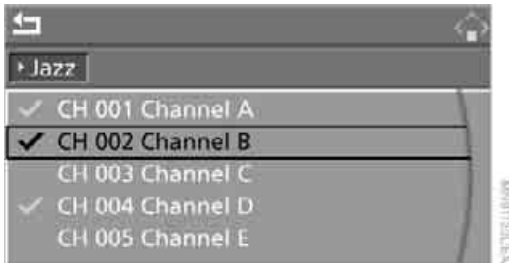
Channels or categories appear in the Control Display.

2. Select a menu item:
   - ▷ "Presets":
     Up to twelve channels you have stored previously.
   - ▷ "All channels":
     All channels are displayed.
   - ▷ "Categories":
     All channels, sorted by categories, e.g. news, jazz.

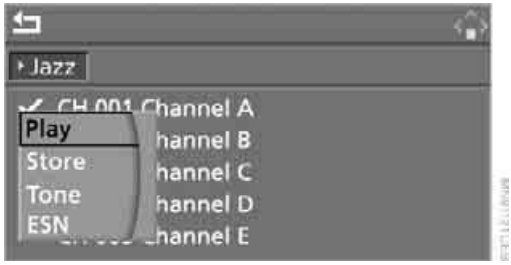
3. Press the controller.
4. If "Categories" has been selected:
   Select the desired category and press the controller.

The channels of this category are displayed.

5. ✔ Select a channel marked with this symbol.

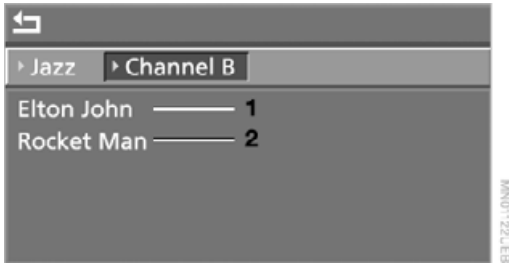


6. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
7. Select "Play" and press the controller.



Additional information

The name of the channel and additional information on the current track are displayed, e.g. the name of the artist.



1 Artist

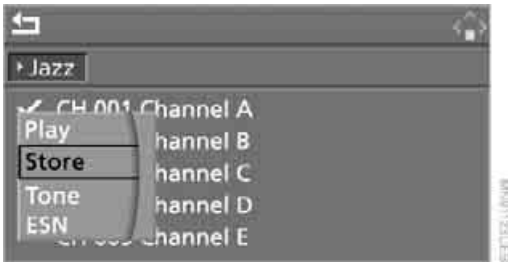
2 Track

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Storing channel

1. Select desired channel.
2. Press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.
3. Select "Store" and press the controller.



   "Presets" is displayed.
4. Turn the controller to select a memory location and press the controller.

The channel is stored. The channels of the last selection criterion are displayed once again after a short time.

Changing channel with buttons next to CD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction.
The system changes to the next enabled channel.

Notes

If no signal can be received for more than 4 seconds, a message is displayed on the Control Display.

Reception may not be possible for certain reasons, e.g. environmental influences or topographical conditions. The satellite radio has no influence on this.
The signal may not be available in tunnels or underground garages, next to tall buildings, near trees, mountains or other sources of radio interference.
Reception is usually possible again as soon as the signal is available again.◀

CarManuals2.com

CD player and CD changer*

Listening to CDs

Compressed audio files*

CDs with compressed audio files, i.e. MP3, can be played by the CD player, but not by the CD changer.

CD player: starting CD

With two drives:
The upper drive is for audio CDs.

Inserting CD

Insert the CD into the drive with the labeled side up. The CD is automatically pulled in.
Playback starts automatically if the sound output is on. For CDs with compressed audio files, it can take up to approx. 1 minute to read in the data depending on the directory structure.

Via iDrive

To start playback when there is already a CD in the drive:

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "CD" is selected and press the controller.

4. With a CD changer, change to the second field from the top and turn the controller until "CD" is selected and press the controller.
   The CD player is started.

Playback starts automatically if the sound output is switched on.

With programmable memory/ direct selection buttons

You can store the function CD player on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons to start the CD player, refer to page 21.

Eject CD

Press the ⏏ button next to CD player.
The CD emerges slightly from the drive.

CarManuals2.com

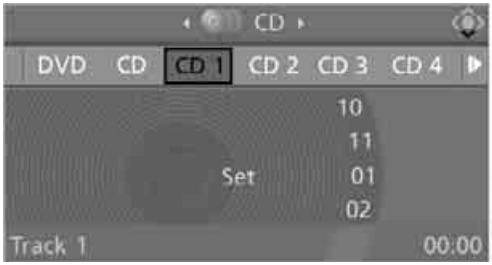
Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CD changer: starting CD

Fill the CD magazine and insert, refer to page 166.

Via iDrive

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "CD" is selected and press the controller.
4. Change to the second field from the top if necessary. Turn the controller until the desired CD, CD 1 - 6, is selected and press the controller.



At the end of the last track, the next CD will be selected.

If the CD magazine has been newly filled, playback begins with the lowest CD, e.g. CD 1, track 1.

The CD magazine's load status is indicated on the Control Display.

With programmable memory/ direct selection buttons

You can store a CD compartment of the CD changer on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons to start the CD changer, refer to page 21.

Selecting a track

Buttons next to CD player

Press the button for the corresponding direction repeatedly until you reach the desired track.

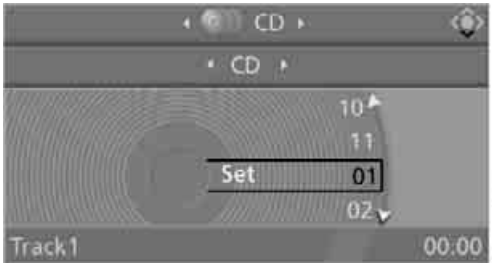
CarManuals2.com

The CD will start play at the start of the track. The track is displayed on the Control Display.

You can also change the track with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

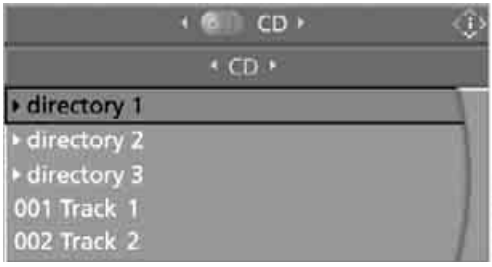
Via iDrive

Select a track by turning the controller.

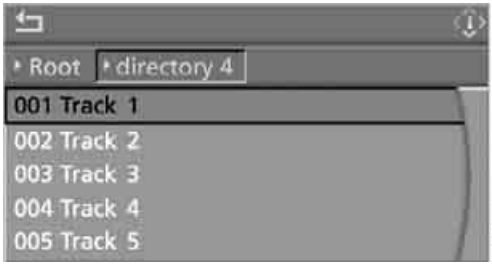


Compressed audio files*

1. Select the directory if necessary and press the controller.

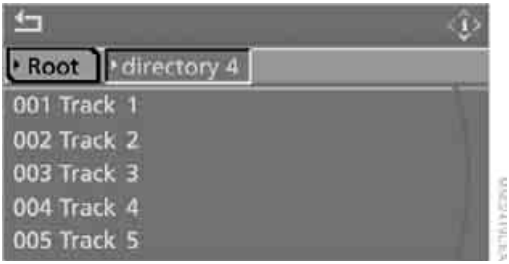


2. Select the track and press the controller.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

To change the directory:
Select the directory and press the controller.



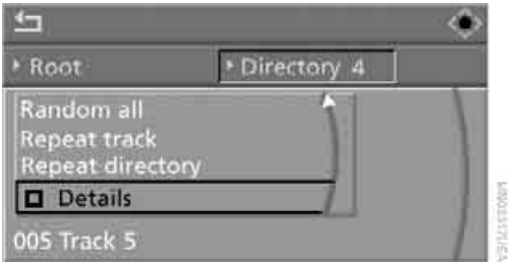
To exit from the menu:
Select the arrow and press the controller.

You can store a certain track on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons, refer to page 21.

Displaying information on track*

With compressed audio files, you can display any information stored on the current track, e.g. the name of the artist.

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Details" and press the controller.



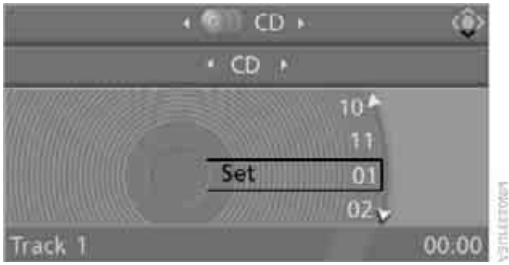
The information for the current track are displayed.

From radio readiness, the setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

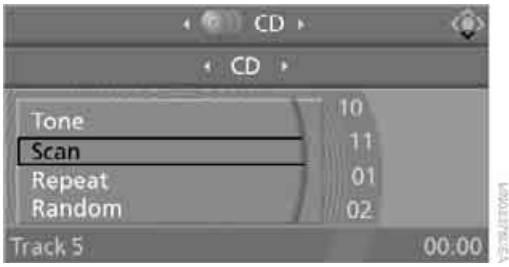
Sampling tracks, scan

The system automatically plays a brief sample from each of the tracks on the current CD.

1. Select "Set" and press the controller.
   Other menu items are displayed.



2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.



To end sampling:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan" and press the controller.

This cancels sampling of the tracks, and the player remains on the current track.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To sample all tracks of the current directory, select "Scan directory" and press the controller.
   - ▷ To sample all tracks of the CD, select "Scan all" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

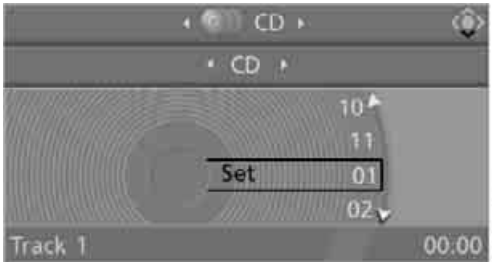
To end sampling:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Scan directory" or "Scan all" and press the controller.

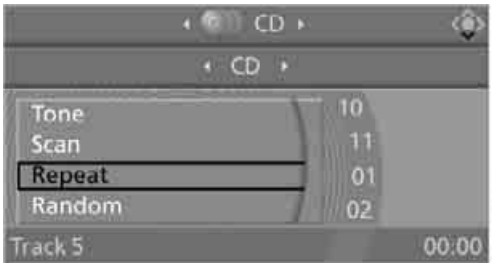
This cancels sampling, and the player remains on the current track.

Repeating a track

1. Select "Set" and press the controller. Other menu items are displayed.



2. Select "Repeat" and press the controller.



The current track on the CD is repeated.

To stop repeating:

1. Press the controller again.
2. Select "Repeat" and press the controller.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To repeat the selected track, select "Repeat track" and press the controller.
   - ▷ To repeat all tracks of the current directory, select "Repeat directory" and press the controller.

To stop repeating:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Repeat track" or "Repeat directory" and press the controller.

Random play sequence

In this mode, the tracks on the current CD are played once in a random sequence.

1. Select "Set" and press the controller. Other menu items are displayed.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

To stop random function:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

Compressed audio files*

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select the desired menu item:
   - ▷ To play all tracks of the current directory in random order, select "Random directory" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

▷ To play all tracks of the CD in random order, select "Random all" and press the controller.

To stop random function:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random directory" or "Random all" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Fast forward/reverse

Buttons next to CD player:

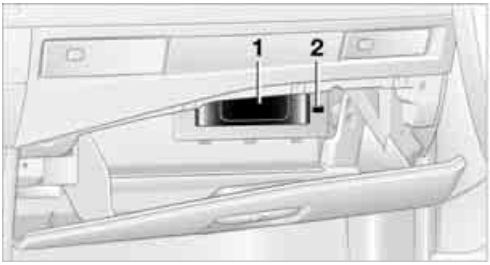
Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

CD magazine

The BMW CD changer for six CDs is installed in the glove compartment.

Removing CD magazine

To insert CDs into the CD magazine **1** or remove them from it, you must first remove the magazine from the CD changer:

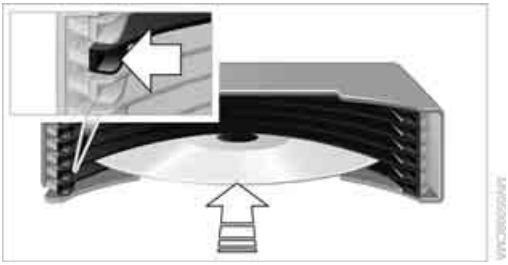


Press button **2**, the CD magazine **1** is ejected.

Wait at least 2 seconds before pushing in the magazine again so that the inserted CDs can be read in again.

Inserting/removing CDs into/from CD magazine

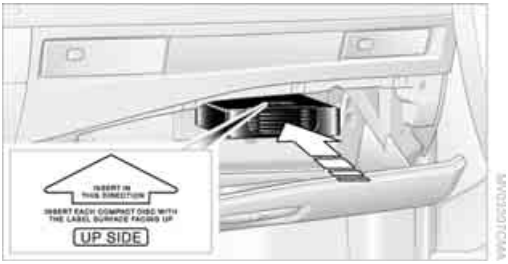
When inserting or removing CDs, remember to hold them by their edges, taking care to avoid touching the data side with its reflective CD memory surface.



Inserting CDs:
Insert one CD into each compartment of the magazine with the labeled side up.

Removing CDs:
Pull out the desired tray and remove the CD.

Inserting CD magazine



Push in the CD magazine as far as possible in the direction of the arrow.

The CD changer automatically reads in the loaded CDs and is then ready for operation.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Notes

⚠ BMW CD/DVD players and changers are officially designated Class 1 laser products. Do not operate if the cover is damaged, otherwise severe eye damage can result.
Do not use self-recorded CDs/DVDs with labels applied as these can become detached during playback due to heat buildup and can cause irreparable damage to the device.
Only use round CDs/DVDs with a standard diameter of 4.7 in/12 cm and do not play CDs/DVDs with an adapter, e.g. CD singles, as otherwise the CD/DVD or the adapter can jam and may no longer eject properly.
Do not use a combined CD/DVD, e.g. DVD^{Plus}, otherwise the CD/DVD can jam and will no longer eject.◀

General malfunctions

BMW CD/DVD changers and players have been optimized for performance in vehicles. In some instances they may be more sensitive to faulty CDs/DVDs than stationary devices would be.

If a CD/DVD cannot be played, first check whether it has been inserted correctly.

CarManuals2.com

Humidity

High levels of humidity can lead to condensation on the CD/DVD or the laser's scan lens and temporarily prevent playback.

Malfunctions with individual CDs/DVDs

If malfunctions occur only with particular CDs/DVDs, this can be due to one of the following causes.

Self-recorded CDs/DVDs

Possible reasons for malfunctions with self-recorded CDs/DVDs are, e.g., inconsistent data-creation or recording processes, or poor quality or high age of the CD/DVD blank.

Only label CDs/DVDs on the upper side with a pen intended for this purpose.

Damaged CDs/DVDs

Avoid fingerprints, dust, scratches and moisture.
Store CDs/DVDs in a sleeve.
Do not subject CDs/DVDs to temperatures over 122 °F /50 °C, high levels of humidity or direct sunlight.

CDs/DVDs with copy protection

CDs/DVDs are often provided with a copy protection feature by the manufacturer. This can mean that some CDs/DVDs cannot be played or can only be played to a limited extent.

Care

If necessary, clean the reflective scanning side of the CDs/DVDs with a commercially available cleaning cloth by wiping in straight lines from the center outward.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

AUX-In connection

You can connect an external audio device, e.g. an MP3 player, and play the sound via the vehicle loudspeakers. The sound can be adjusted via iDrive.

Connecting

1 Connection for audio playback: 1/8 in/3,5 mm jack plug

To play audio tracks through the vehicle's loudspeaker system, connect the headset or line-out port of the external device to connection **1**.

CarManuals2.com

Starting audio playback

The audio device must be switched on.

Via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.

   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "AUX" is selected and press the controller.

4. Select "AUX IN" and press the controller.
5. Adjust volume and sound if necessary.

With programmable memory/ direct selection buttons

You can save the function audio AUX on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons to start audio playback, refer to page 21.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

USB/audio interface*

You can connect audio devices to the USB/ audio interface, e.g. an iPod or a USB device (MP3 player, USB memory stick). You can then operate these via iDrive.

The system can play back common audio files, e.g. MP3, WMA, WAV (PCM) and ACC, as well as playback lists in the M3U format.

Due to the large number of audio devices available on the market, operation via the vehicle cannot be ensured for every audio device.

Ask your BMW center which audio devices are suitable.

Connecting

1 USB interface

2 Connection for audio playback: 1/8 in/3,5 mm jack plug

iPod

To connect the iPod, use the BMW cable adapter for Apple iPods. For more information, please contact a BMW center or consult our website: www.bmw.com

For audio playback via the vehicle loudspeakers, connect the iPod to the connections **1** and **2**.

The menu structure of the iPod is supported by the USB/audio interface.

USB storage medium

Use a flexible adapter cable for connection to protect the USB interface and your USB device against mechanical damage.◀

CarManuals2.com

For audio playback via the vehicle loudspeakers, connect the USB device to the connection **1**.

After connecting for the first time, the information of all tracks (e.g. artist, music genre) and the playback lists of the USB device are transferred to the vehicle. This process can take some time. The time required is dependent on the USB device and on the number of tracks.

During the transfer you can select the tracks via the directories and file names.

Following the transfer you can call up the tracks via the information and playback lists.

The information of up to four USB devices can be stored in the vehicle, for a total of approx. 20,000 tracks.

If a fifth USB device is connected, the information of the tracks of the first USB device stored in the vehicle is deleted.

Music tracks with integrated Digital Rights Management (DRM) cannot be played.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Starting audio playback

Via iDrive

If the audio device has a device name, this will be displayed if possible.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller backwards to open "Entertainment".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "AUX" is selected and press the controller.

4. Select "USB" or the name of the audio device and press the controller.

5. The playback starts with the first track.

With programmable memory/ direct selection buttons

You can save the function "USB" on the programmable memory/direct selection buttons to start audio playback, refer to page 21.

Selecting a track

You can call up the tracks via the playback lists and information. With USB devices you can also call up the tracks via the file directory.

1. Make your selection, e.g. "Playlists" or "Artists", and press the controller.

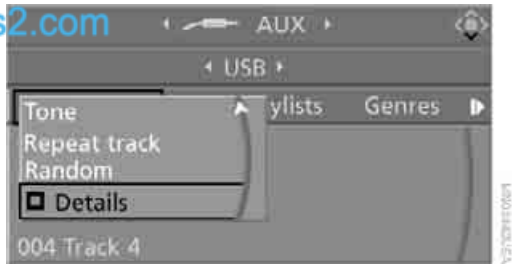
2. Select the track and press the controller.

Displaying information on track

You can display any information stored on the current track, e.g. the name of the artist.

1. Press the controller during playback.
2. Select "Details" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com



The information for the current track are displayed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Repeating a track

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select "Repeat track" and press the controller.

To stop repeating:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Repeat track" and press the controller.

Random play sequence

You can play back the tracks of the selected list in random order, e.g. all tracks of an artist.

1. Select the current track and press the controller.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

End random playback:

1. Press the controller.
2. Select "Random" and press the controller.

Fast forward/reverse

Buttons next to CD player:

Press and hold the button for the corresponding direction.

Notes

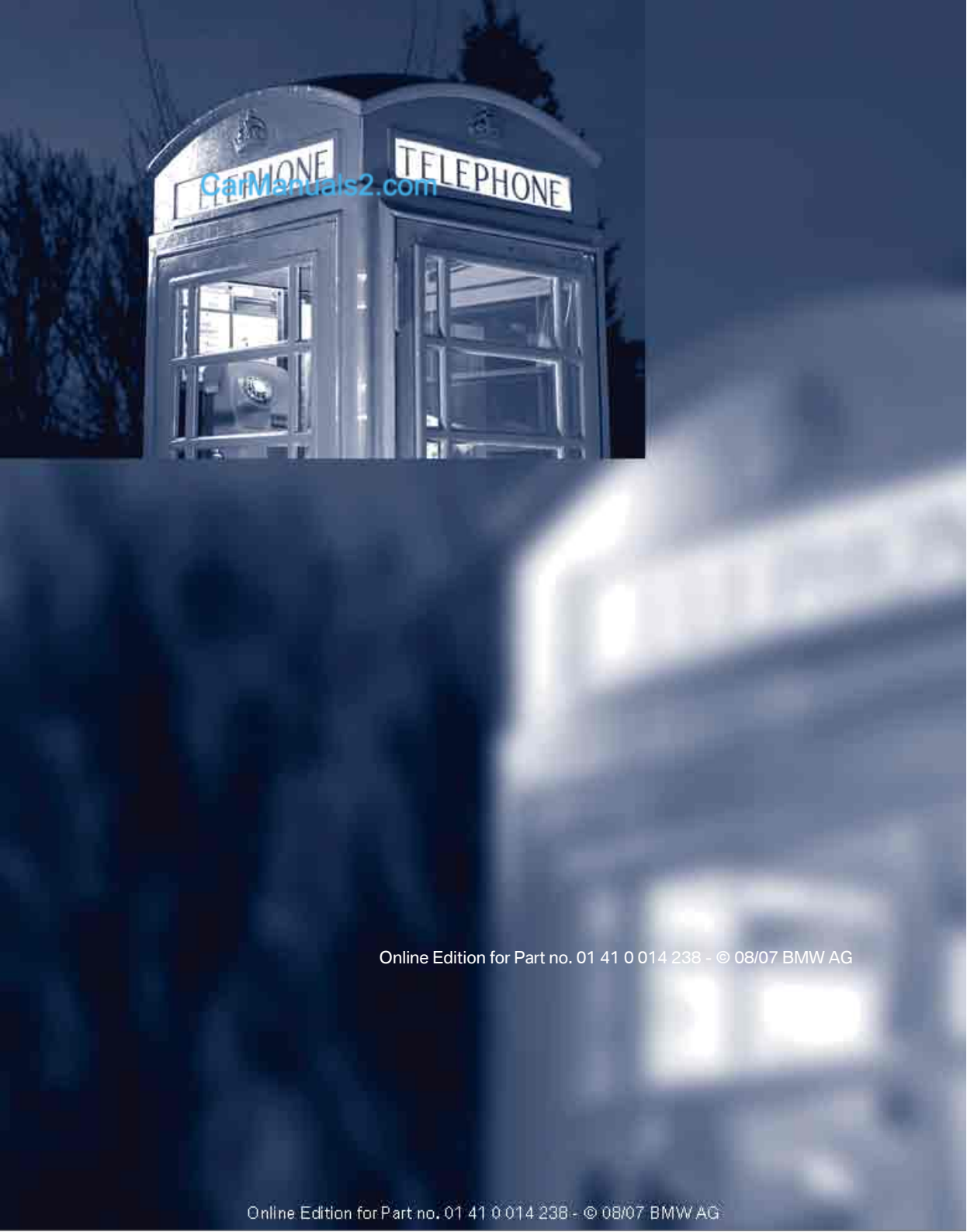
Do not subject the audio device to extreme environmental conditions, e.g. extremely high temperatures, refer to the operating instructions of the audio device. Otherwise, the audio device can be damaged and the resulting distraction can reduce road safety while driving.◀

Depending on the configuration of the audio files, e.g. bit rates greater than 256 Kbit/s, proper playback cannot always be ensured.

Connecting instructions

- ▷ The USB/audio interface supplies the connected audio device with power, provided the audio device supports this function. It is therefore unnecessary to connect the audio device to a socket in the vehicle during operation.
- ▷ Do not force the plug into the USB interface.
- ▷ Do not connect any devices, e.g. fans or lamps, to the USB/audio interface.
- ▷ Do not connect USB hard disks.
- ▷ Do not use the audio interface to recharge external devices.

CarManuals2.com



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Communications

This chapter summarizes how to operate your mobile phone using iDrive or voice control and how to use BMW Assist or TeleService.

CarManuals2.com

Telephoning*

The concept

Your BMW is equipped with a full mobile phone preparation package. After pairing a suitable mobile phone in the vehicle once, you can operate the mobile phone via iDrive, with the buttons on the steering wheel and by voice.

A mobile phone that has been paired once is automatically detected again with the engine running or the ignition switched on as soon as it is in the vehicle interior. The logon data of up to four mobile phones can be stored simultaneously. If several mobile phones are detected simultaneously, the respective last mobile phone paired can be operated via the vehicle.

Using a phone in your vehicle

Using snap-in adapter*

The so-called snap-in adapter, a mobile phone cradle, enables the battery to be charged and the mobile phone to be connected to the external antenna of your vehicle. This ensures improved network reception and a consistent voice reproduction quality. Ask your BMW center which mobile phones snap-in adapters are offered for.

For your safety

A car phone makes life more convenient in many ways, and can even save lives in an emergency. While you should consult your mobile phone's separate operating instructions for a detailed description of safety precautions and information, we request that you direct your particular attention to the following:

⚠ Only make entries when traffic conditions allow you to do so. Do not hold the mobile phone in your hand while you are driving; use the hands-free system instead. If you do not observe this precaution, your being distracted can endanger vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

CarManuals2.com

Suitable mobile phones

Ask your BMW center which mobile phones with a Bluetooth interface are supported by the mobile phone preparation package or which mobile phones snap-in adapters are available for. These mobile phones support the functions described in this Owner's Manual with a certain software version. Malfunctions can occur with other mobile phones.

Care instructions

You can find what you need to know about caring for your mobile phone in the separate Caring for your vehicle brochure and in the mobile phone operating instructions.

Operating options

You can operate the mobile phone* using:

- ▷ Buttons on steering wheel, refer to page 11
- ▷ iDrive, refer to page 16
- ▷ Voice commands, refer to page 185
- ▷ Programmable memory/direct selection buttons, refer to page 21

Avoid operating a mobile phone detected by the vehicle with the keypad of the mobile phone, otherwise malfunctions can occur.

Placing phone calls with BMW Assist system*: BMW Assist calls

You can use the BMW Assist system via the hands-free unit for BMW Assist calls.

When the status information "BMW Assist" or "BMW Service" is displayed in "Communication", only BMW Assist calls are possible.

It may not be possible to establish a telephone connection using the mobile phone while a connection is being established to BMW Assist or while a call to BMW Assist is already in progress. If this happens, you must log off the

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

mobile phone from the vehicle if you wish to place a call with the mobile phone.

Commissioning

Pairing mobile phone in vehicle

CarManuals2.com

The following prerequisites must be met:

- ▷ Suitable mobile phone: the mobile phone is supported by the full mobile phone preparation package. Information on this subject is also provided on the Internet at: www.bmw.com
- ▷ The mobile phone is ready to operate.
- ▷ The Bluetooth link on the vehicle, refer to page 179, and on the mobile phone is active.
- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone, the mobile phone may need presetting: e.g. via the following menu items:
  - ▷ Bluetooth activated
  - ▷ Connection not with confirmation
  - ▷ Reconnect
- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone model, the setting energy saving mode can, for example, result in vehicle failing to detect the paired mobile phone.
- ▷ For pairing, specify any desired number as the Bluetooth passkey, e.g. 1. This Bluetooth passkey is no longer required following successful pairing.
- ▷ The ignition is switched on.

⚠ Only pair the mobile phone with the vehicle stopped, otherwise the passengers and other road users can be endangered due to a lack of attentiveness on the part of the driver.◀

Switching on ignition

1. Insert the remote control as far as possible into the ignition lock.
2. Switch on the ignition by pressing the Start/Stop button without depressing the brake or clutch pedal.

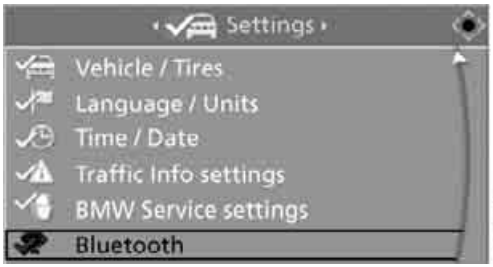
Preparation via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

3. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.

4. Press the controller to open the i menu.
5. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

6. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.

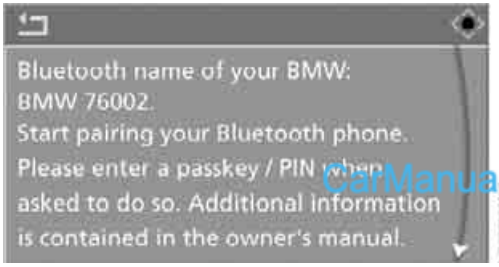


7. Change into the second field from the top, select "Phone" and press the controller.

8. Select "Pair new phone" and press the controller.

9. Select "Start pairing" and press the controller.

The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is displayed.



Preparation with mobile phone

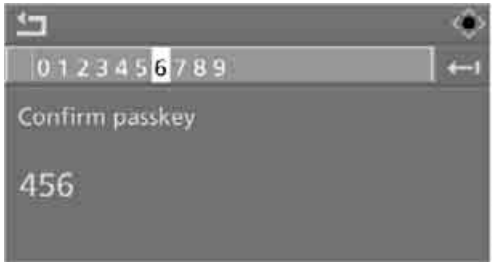
10. Additional operations must be carried out on the mobile phone and differ depending on the model, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone, e.g. find, connect or pair under Bluetooth device. The Bluetooth name of the vehicle is also shown on the mobile phone display.

11. Select the Bluetooth name of the vehicle on the mobile phone display.

Pairing

Depending on your mobile phone, you will first be requested consecutively via the display of your mobile phone or iDrive to enter the Bluetooth passkey you specified.

12. Enter the Bluetooth passkey.
    Depending on the mobile phone, approx. 30 seconds are available for entering the Bluetooth passkey on the mobile phone and on the Control Display.



13. Change into the third field from the top, select "Confirm passkey" and press the controller.

14. Wait a few seconds until the "Communication" menu appears.

The next time you use the mobile phone in the vehicle interior, it will be detected within a maximum of 2 minutes with the engine running or the ignition switched on.

▷ With some mobile phone models it may be necessary to make certain settings for a permanent Bluetooth link, e.g. via the menu item Authorization or Secure connection. Refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

As soon as a mobile phone is detected by the vehicle, the phone book entries stored on the SIM card or on your mobile phone are transmitted to your vehicle. This transmission is dependent on your mobile phone, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone if necessary, and can take several minutes.

CarManuals2.com

If not all phone book entries are displayed:

- ▷ Transfer all phone book entries from the SIM card to the mobile phone if necessary.
- ▷ It may not be possible to display phone book entries with special characters.

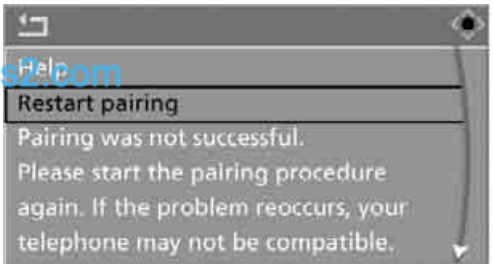
Up to four mobile phones can be paired consecutively. When you pair a fifth mobile phone, the pairing data of the mobile phone for which the pairing data were stored first in the vehicle will be deleted.

Check if pairing is unsuccessful

- ▷ Is the mobile phone supported by the mobile phone preparation package? Information on this subject is also provided on the Internet at: www.bmw.com.
- ▷ Do the Bluetooth passkeys on the mobile phone and the vehicle match? The same Bluetooth passkey must be entered both on the mobile phone display and via iDrive.
- ▷ Have you required longer than 30 seconds to enter the Bluetooth passkey?
- ▷ Only a limited number of devices can be connected to the mobile phone. Delete the connection to other devices if necessary.
- ▷ The mobile phone no longer reacts? Switch the mobile phone off and then on again or disconnect the power supply.

To repeat pairing:

1. Select "Restart pairing" and press the controller.

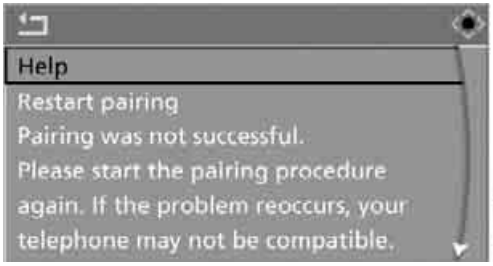


2. Repeat steps 9 to 14.

If pairing was repeatedly unsuccessful, contact BMW Customer Relations.

To call BMW Customer Relations:

Select "Help" and press the controller.



The phone number of BMW Customer Relations and information required for pairing is shown on the display. With mobile phones already paired, you can select the phone number of BMW Customer Relations to establish the connection.

List of paired mobile phones

The mobile phones for which the vehicle has stored the pairing data can be displayed. If several paired mobile phones are detected by the vehicle simultaneously, you can operate the mobile phone highest up in the list via the vehicle.

You can change the order of the mobile phones in the list. As long as a mobile phone is selected in this list, the mobile phones cannot be operated via the vehicle.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
4. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.
5. Change into the second field from the top, select "Phone" and press the controller.
6. Select the desired mobile phone.

   With two drives:

   ▷ Move the controller to the rear to change into the bottom field.

   ▷ Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.

   With a single drive:

   ▷ Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.

7. Select "Move device up" and press the controller.

   The selected mobile phone is moved upward by one position.

Unpairing mobile phone from vehicle

If you no longer want to operate a mobile phone via the vehicle, you can delete the pairing data of the mobile phone.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Switch off the mobile phone.
2. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.
3. Press the controller to open the i menu.
4. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
5. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller. "Bluetooth" is selected.
6. Change into the second field from the top, select "Phone" and press the controller.
7. Select the desired mobile phone.

   With two drives:

   ▷ Move the controller to the rear to change into the bottom field.

   ▷ Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

With a single drive:

▷ Select the desired mobile phone and press the controller.

8. Select "Delete device" and press the controller.

The unpaired mobile phone is deleted from the list.
The phone book entries and the lists of stored phone numbers are also deleted.

Activating/deactivating Bluetooth link

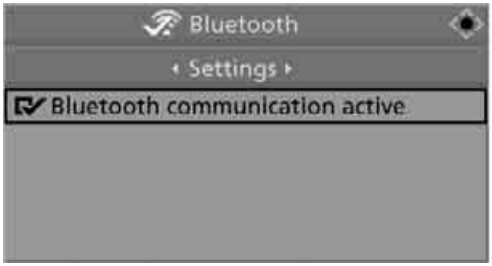
▷ Bluetooth technology is not approved in all countries. Observe the applicable local regulations. Temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between the vehicle and the mobile phone if necessary.
If the Bluetooth link is deactivated, you cannot operate your mobile phone via the vehicle and other devices with a Bluetooth interface can be used via the mobile phone, e.g. a laptop computer.◀

To temporarily deactivate the Bluetooth link between your vehicle and your mobile phone:

1. Remove the mobile phone from the cradle and switch it off.
2. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.
3. Press the controller to open the i menu.
4. Select "Settings" and press the controller.
5. Select "Bluetooth" and press the controller.

6. Change into the second field from the top, select "Settings" and press the controller.

7. Select "Bluetooth communication active" and press the controller to activate or deactivate the link.



☑ The Bluetooth link is activated.
☐ The Bluetooth link is deactivated.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Adjusting volume

Turn the knob during a call to select the desired volume.

This volume for the hands-free system is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

You can also adjust the volume with buttons on the steering wheel, refer to page 11.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Operation via iDrive

You can operate the following functions via iDrive:

- ▷ Accepting/refusing a call
- ▷ Dialing phone numbers
- ▷ Dialing phone numbers from the phone book
- ▷ Dialing stored phone numbers, e.g. from the list of accepted calls.
- ▷ Ending a call

When the ignition and radio readiness are switched off, e.g. after removing the remote control from the ignition lock, you can continue an ongoing call via the hands-free system for no more than 25 minutes.

Speech quality

If the person you are talking to cannot understand you well, this may be due to excessively loud background noises. The full mobile phone preparation package can compensate for these noises to a certain degree. To optimize the speech quality during a call, we recommend that you:

- ▷ Reduce background noises, e.g. by closing the windows, reducing the air volume of the automatic climate control or pointing the opened front vent outlets downward
- ▷ Reduce volume of hands-free system

Requirements

- ▷ The logon data of the mobile phone are stored in the vehicle and the mobile phone is ready to operate.
- ▷ The engine is running or the ignition is switched on.
- ▷ The mobile phone is detected by the vehicle.

Opening Communication

CarManuals2.com

You operate many of the functions described in the following via the "Communication" menu.

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button to open the start menu.

2. Move the controller forward to open "Communication".

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Receiving calls

If you have the phone number of the caller stored in the phone book and the phone number has been transmitted, the name of the entry is displayed.

Accepting a call

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Alternative:

"Accept" is selected.
Press the controller.

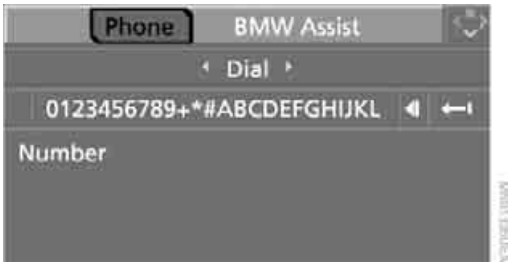
Rejecting a call

Select "Reject" and press the controller.
The caller is diverted to your mailbox if it has been activated.

Calling

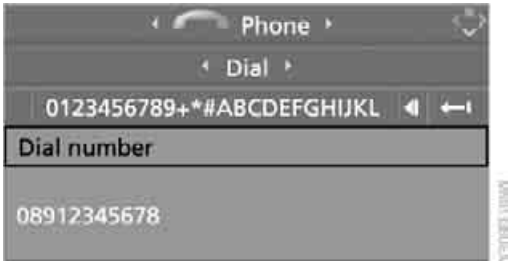
Dialing phone numbers

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.



2. Select "Dial" and press the controller.
3. Enter the desired phone number by dialing the individual digits and pressing the controller.
   Always enter the complete phone number consisting of national dialing code, area code, and phone number.
   The letters correspond to the digits on the keypad of the mobile phone.

   To delete the last digit:
   Move the controller toward the right to select the arrow and press the controller.
4. Select "Dial number" and press the controller.



   Alternative:
   Press the button on the steering wheel.

For your phone number to be displayed to the person you are calling, the display of phone numbers must be enabled by your service provider.

With programmable memory/ direct selection buttons

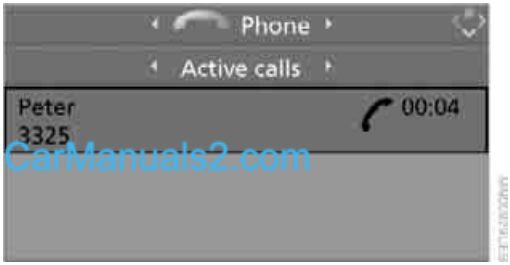
You can store phone numbers on and call them up with the programmable memory/direct selection buttons, refer to page 21.

Ending a call

Press the button on the steering wheel.

Alternative:

1. Select the phone number and press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

2. "End call" is selected:
   Press the controller.

Dialing a phone number from phone book or a phone number stored in a list

Phone numbers you have called, incoming calls and the entries of the phone book are stored in lists when the mobile phone is connected to the vehicle via Bluetooth. If the caller is entered in the phone book, the name of the entry is displayed instead of the phone number.
You can select the desired subscriber from the list and establish the connection.

Five lists are available:

- ▷ "A - Z"
  The entries of the mobile-phone phone book, consisting of the name and phone number, are sorted alphabetically.
- ▷ "Top 8"
  The eight numbers called most frequently from the phone book "A - Z" are automatically stored in the Top 8 list.
- ▷ "Redial"
  The last eight phone numbers you have dialed are automatically stored. The last number dialed is at the top of the list.
- ▷ "Missed calls"
  The phone numbers of the last eight calls which were not accepted are stored. This requires the telephone number of the caller to have been sent.
- ▷ "Received calls"
  The phone numbers of the last eight accepted calls are stored. This requires the telephone number of the caller to have been sent.

Dialing a phone number from phone book

The list "A - Z" is available for your phone book entries. The phone book entries appear on the Control Display.

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

2. Select "A - Z" and press the controller.
3. To limit the number of displayed entries, select the first letter of the desired entry and press the controller.
4. Select the desired entry and press the controller.

5. Select "Call" and press the controller.
   The system dials the number.

If different phone numbers are stored in the mobile phone under one name, e.g. office and home, the name is shown once for each phone number.

You can change a phone number stored in the phone book, e.g. to call a specific extension:

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.
2. Select "A - Z" and press the controller.
3. Select the desired entry and press the controller.
4. Select "Add digits" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

5. Change the phone number.
6. Select "Dial number" and press the controller.

Dialing a phone number stored in a list

To select an entry and establish a connection:

1. Select "Phone" and press the controller.
2. Select list and press the controller:
   - ▷ "Top 8"
   - ▷ "Redial"
   - ▷ "Missed calls"
   - ▷ "Received calls"

3. Select the desired entry and press the controller.

4. Select "Call" and press the controller.
   The system dials the number.

Deleting individual entries

1. Select the desired entry from the list and press the controller.
2. Select "Delete" and press the controller.

The entry is deleted.

Deleting entire list

1. Select an entry from the list and press the controller.
2. Select "Delete all numbers" and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

3. Select "Yes" and press the controller.
   The list is deleted.

BMW Contact*

If you are not enabled for BMW Assist, you can have several service phone numbers displayed:

- ▷ BMW Roadside Assistance* when you require breakdown assistance
- ▷ BMW center, e.g. when you want to make an appointment for service
- ▷ BMW Customer Relations* for information on all aspects of your vehicle

If BMW Assist is enabled, refer to page 189.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

You can dial the displayed service phone numbers if your mobile phone is paired in the vehicle:

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Select "BMW Contact" and press the controller.

4. Select "BMW Contact Numbers" and press the controller.

5. Select one of the following menu items and press the controller:
   - ▷ "Roadside Assistance"
   - ▷ "Customer Relations"
   - ▷ "Service Request"
6. Select "Call" and press the controller.

Contact is established.

Transmitting phone number via tone dialing method

The tone dialing method is required for access to network services or for controlling devices, e.g. remote checking of an answering machine.

This function is available when a connection has been established.

1. Establish connection.

2. With a single drive:
   Press the controller.
   Select "Keypad" and press the controller.
   With two drives:
   Move the controller backwards until the bottom field is selected.
3. Select the desired character and press the controller.
   Each character is sent immediately and confirmed by a tone depending on the mobile phone model.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Changing between mobile phone and hands-free system

From mobile phone to hands-free system*

CarManuals2.com

You can continue calls begun outside the Bluetooth range of the vehicle via the hands-free system when the motor is running or the ignition is switched on. Depending on your mobile phone, the system automatically changes over to the hands-free mode.

For mobile phones that do not automatically change over to the hands-free mode:

- ▷ Depending on the mobile phone model used, the conversation can be continued via the hands-free system if necessary. Act according to what is shown on the mobile phone display, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone.
- ▷ Press the button above the storage compartment. Changing over may take several seconds.

From hands-free system to mobile phone

When you telephone via the hands-free system, you can also continue the call via the mobile phone if necessary, depending on the mobile phone model. Act according to what is shown on the mobile phone display, refer to the operating instructions of your mobile phone.

As an alternative, you can deactivate the Bluetooth link.

Depending on your mobile phone model, poor reception of the wireless communications network can result in the system changing from the hands-free system to the mobile phone.

Operation by voice*

The concept

You can operate your mobile phone without having to remove your hands from the steering wheel. When making your entries, you will be supported by announcements or questions in many cases.

The same prerequisites as for operation via iDrive apply, refer to page 180.

Voice commands

Activating system

1. Briefly press the button on the steering wheel.
   An acoustic signal indicates that you can say commands.
2. Say the command.

Ending/canceling operation by voice

Press the button on the steering wheel
or

›Cancel‹.

In dialogs where text is spoken, not a command, e.g. a name, canceling is only possible using the button on the steering wheel.

Having possible commands read aloud

The system understands default commands that must be spoken word for word.
You can have the possible commands spoken by the system at any point:

›Help‹.

Using alternative commands

There are often a number of commands to run a function, e.g.:

›Dial name‹ or ›Name‹.

The system recognizes digits from zero to nine.

You can say each digit individually or group them into a sequence to accelerate the input.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Example: dialing phone numbers

To start the dialog:

Press the button on the steering wheel.

You say	The voice control answers
›Dial number‹	››Please say the number‹‹
e.g. ›123 456 7890‹	Depending on equipment: ››123 456 7890. Continue?‹‹ or ››123 456 7890. And next?‹‹
›Dial‹	››Dialing number‹‹

Setting volume of instructions

You can adjust the volume for the instructions from the system:

Turn the knob during instructions.

This volume for the instructions is maintained, even if the other audio sources are set to minimum volume.

The setting is stored for the remote control currently in use.

Calling

Dialing phone numbers

1. ›Dial number‹.
2. Say the phone number.
   For telephone calls abroad, say ›Plus‹ and then the country code.
3. ›Dial‹.

The connection to the desired subscriber is established.

Correcting phone number

After the last spoken sequence of digits has been repeated by the system, you can delete this sequence of digits.

›Correct number‹.
The digits are deleted.

The command ›Correct number‹ can be repeated as often as you like.

Deleting phone number

›Delete‹

All digits entered up to this point are deleted.

Voice phone book

Operating by voice command requires a personal voice phone book.

- With separate drives for audio CDs and navigation DVDs, the entries are automatically adopted from your mobile phone's memory.
- With a single drive, the entries must be input by voice and are independent of your mobile phone's memory. In this case, it is not possible to use voice command either to call phone numbers stored in the mobile phone or to store new numbers. Up to 50 entries can be input. An entry always consists of a name and phone number.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Creating and editing voice phone book*

Store entry:

An entry always consists of a name and phone number.

1. ›Save name‹.
2. Speak the name.
   The spoken length of the names in the phone book must not exceed approx. 2 seconds.
3. Speak the phone number after being requested to do so by the system.
4. To store the phone number: ›Save‹.

Delete entry:

You can delete any entry from the voice phone book.

1. ›Delete name‹.
   The dialog for deleting an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.

Delete all entries:

›Delete phone book‹ deletes all entries in the phone book.

1. ›Delete phone book‹.
   The dialog for deleting phone book is opened.
2. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.
3. Confirm the repeated prompt with ›Yes‹.

Have entries read aloud and select:

You can have all the entries of your voice phone book read aloud in the order of input and select a certain entry to establish a connection:

1. ›Read phone book‹.
   The dialog for reading phone book is opened.
2. ›Dial number‹ when the desired entry is read aloud.

Selecting an entry

The connection to the phone number of the selected entry is established.

1. ›Dial name‹.
   The dialog for selecting an entry is opened.
2. Say the name when prompted.
3. Confirm the prompt with ›Yes‹.

Redialing

The ›Redial‹ command calls "Redial".

Notes

Important for voice commands

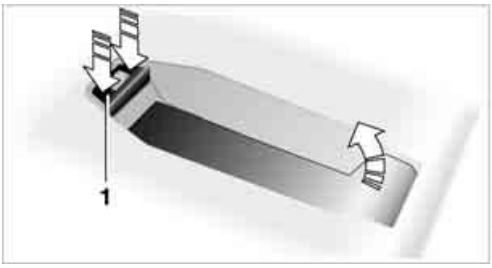
For voice commands, keep the following in mind:

- Issue the commands smoothly and at normal volume, avoiding excessive emphasis and pauses.
- Keep the doors, windows and glass sunroof closed to prevent interference from ambient noise.
- Avoid making other noise in the vehicle while speaking.

CarManuals2.com

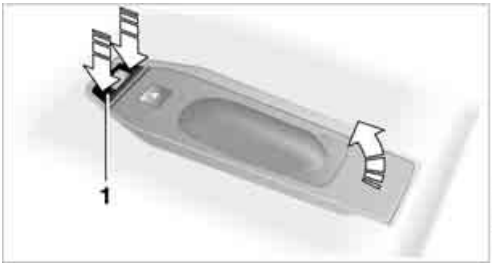
Mounting/removing snap-in adapter

1. Press the area **1** around the button and remove the cover.



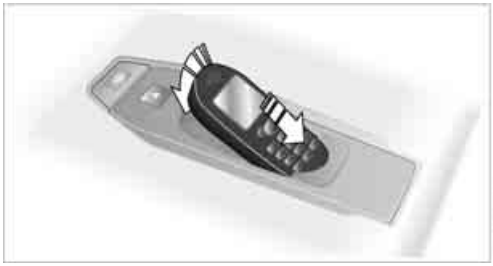
2. Insert the snap-in adapter at the front and press down until it engages.

To remove the snap-in adapter:
Press the area **1** around the button.



Inserting mobile phone

1. Remove the protective cap from the mobile phone's antenna connector if necessary, so that the mobile phone can engage in the snap-in adapter.
2. Push the mobile phone with the buttons facing upward toward the electrical connections and press down until it engages.



The mobile phone's battery is charged from radio readiness or with the steering unlocked.

▷ To protect the vehicle's batteries, avoid using the phone when the ignition is switched off.◀

Removing mobile phone

CarManuals2.com

Press button.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

BMW Assist*

BMW Assist provides you with various services. For example, the position data of your vehicle can be transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center if an emergency request* has been initiated.

Many BMW Assist services depend on the individually agreed contract.

After your contract has expired, the BMW Assist system will be deactivated by the BMW Assist Response Center without you having to visit a BMW center. After the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, no BMW Assist service will be available. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a BMW center after signing a new contract.

Requirements

You can use BMW Assist when the following requirements are met:

- ▷ The installed BMW Assist system is logged on to a mobile phone network. This network must be capable of transmitting the services.
- ▷ To transmit position data, the vehicle must be able to determine the current position.
- ▷ In order to activate and update BMW Assist, a GPS signal must be available.
- ▷ You have subscribed to BMW Assist with your BMW center or with the BMW Assist Response Center. Activation must be completed.
- ▷ BMW Assist is activated, refer to page 194.

CarManuals2.com

Offered services

The following services are available via BMW Assist:

- ▷ Emergency request, refer to page 223:
  When you press the SOS button, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center. The BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you.
- ▷ Automatic collision notification:
  Under certain conditions, a connection is established to the BMW Assist Response Center immediately after a serious accident. If possible, the BMW Assist Response Center contacts you and takes further steps to help you.
- ▷ Enhanced roadside assistance:
  You can call Roadside Assistance* of the BMW Group should you require help in the event of a breakdown. If possible, the vehicle data and position data are transmitted during this time.
- ▷ BMW Customer Relations:
  For information related to your vehicle, call BMW Customer Relations.
- ▷ TeleService:
  The data on the service status of your vehicle or on required inspections are transmitted to your BMW center either automatically prior to the due date or when you request a BMW service appointment.
- ▷ Remote door unlock:
  Inform the BMW Assist Response Center, e.g. if your remote control is not available and you want to have the vehicle unlocked.
- ▷ Stolen vehicle recovery:
  After your vehicle has been reported to the police as stolen, the BMW Assist Response Center can locate its position. To do this, the vehicle electronics must be ready for operation.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

In addition, you can be provided with other services, e.g. the concierge service or information on route planning, traffic conditions, and the weather. With Critical Calling, you can make a limited number of calls via the BMW Assist Response Center, e.g. if you do not have your mobile phone with you.
Press the SOS button to contact the BMW Assist Response Center, see below.

You also have access to the BMW Assist concierge service via the Internet.

Characteristics of the offered services

The following characteristics apply to the services:

- ▷ The offered services are country-specific.
- ▷ Voice contact is established or data are transmitted, depending on the equipment and the country. In some countries, it is possible to do both.
- ▷ The data transmitted can, for example, be the vehicle data, your current position or the CBS Condition Based Service data.

Using services

Contacting BMW Assist Response Center

You can contact the BMW Assist Response Center via the SOS button.

1. Briefly press protective cover to open.
   Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

2. Press the button for at least 2 seconds.

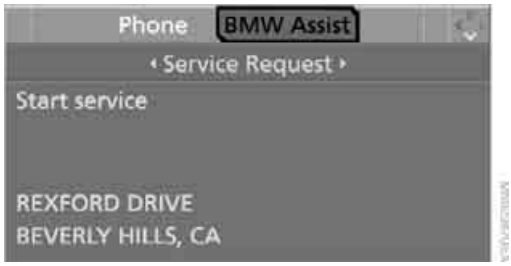
The BMW Assist Response Center is contacted.

Roadside assistance

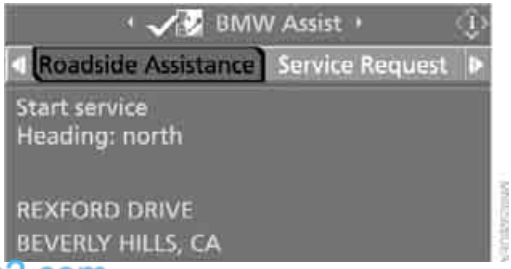
iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.

2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.



4. Select "Roadside Assistance" and press the controller.



If the location can be determined, the current vehicle position is displayed.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

5. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

The BMW Assist Response Center will connect you to the Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group.

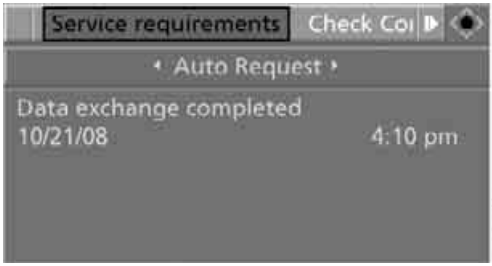
TeleService

Automatic service notification*

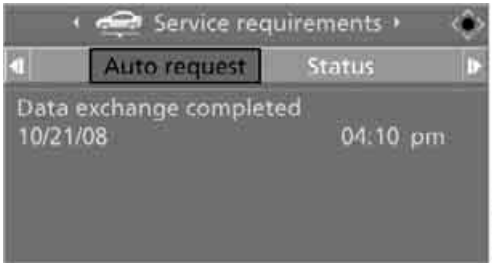
The data on the service status of your vehicle or on required inspections are transmitted automatically prior to the due date. You can check when the BMW center was notified.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Info sources" and press the controller.

4. Select "Service Info" and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.



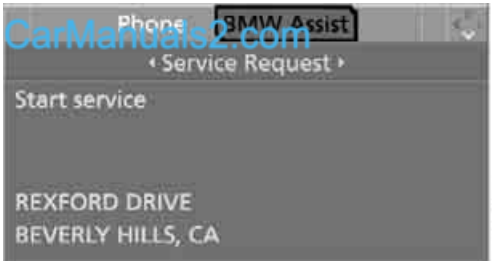
6. Select "Auto Request" and press the controller.



Manual service notification

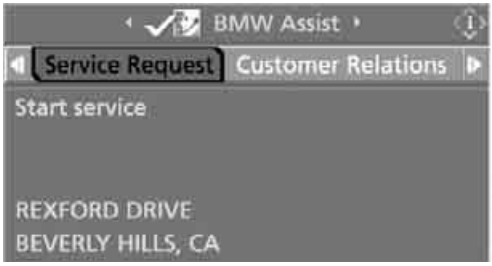
You can transmit data regarding your vehicle's service status to your BMW center when you wish to arrange a service appointment.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.



CarManuals2.com

4. Select "Service Request".



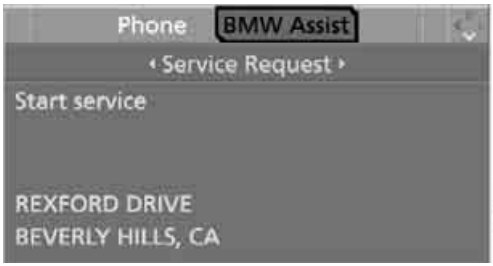
5. Press the controller.
6. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

The data relevant for service are transmitted. Your BMW center will contact you to set up an appointment for service.

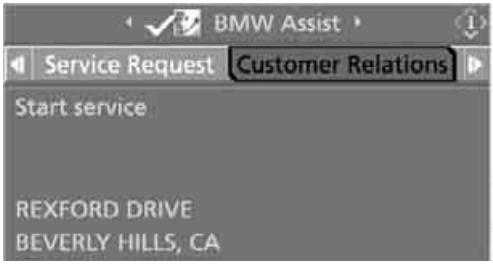
Contacting BMW Customer Relations

For information on all aspects of your vehicle, you can contact BMW Customer Relations.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.



4. Select "Customer Relations".



5. Press the controller.
6. Select "Start service" and press the controller.

You will be connected to BMW Customer Relations by the BMW Assist Response Center.

Concierge service*

When you call the concierge service of BMW Assist, you can, for example, obtain information on current events, filling stations or hotels and have their phone numbers and addresses transmitted. Many hotels can be booked directly through the BMW Assist concierge service.

The concierge service must be enabled separately by the BMW Assist Response Center.

Calling up information

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Move the controller forward to select "Communication".
3. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "BMW Assist" is selected and press the controller.

4. Select "Concierge" and press the controller.

5. Select "Start Service" and press the controller.

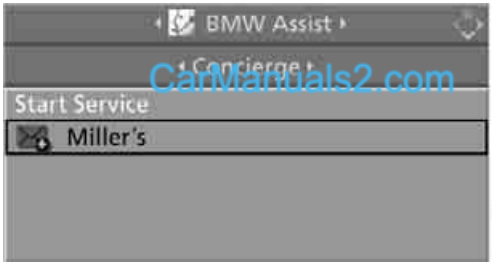
CarManuals2.com

The BMW Assist Response Center will connect you with a BMW Assist concierge.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Displaying transmitted data

Select the received message if necessary and press the controller.



Dialing a phone number or transferring an address for destination guidance

1. Select "Options" and press the controller.

2. Select a menu item:

▷ With "Call" you can establish a telephone connection. A prerequisite for this is that your Bluetooth mobile phone has been paired with the vehicle.

▷ Press "Select as destination" to transfer the address to the navigation system for destination guidance.

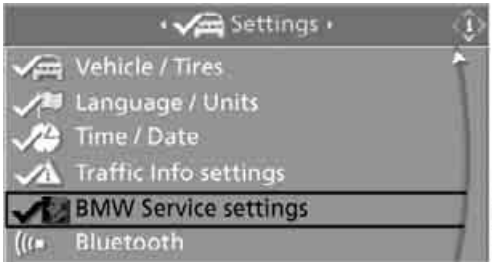
Updating BMW Assist

Displaying and updating services

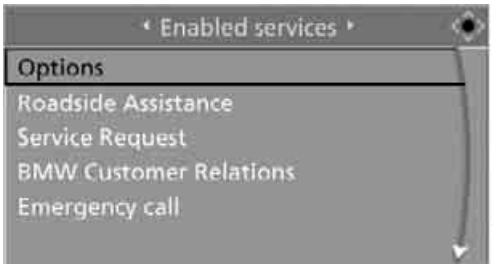
You will be notified of any changes in the services offered by BMW Assist. In this case you should update the service functions.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "BMW Service settings" is selected and press the controller.



5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Enabled services" is selected and press the controller.
   The currently available BMW Assist services are displayed.
6. Select "Options" and press the controller.



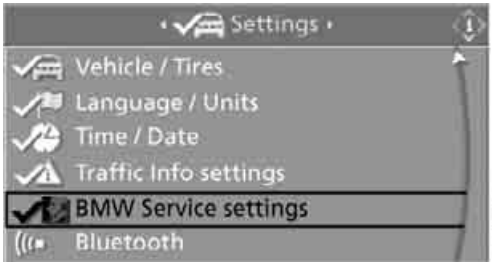
7. Select "Update services" and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

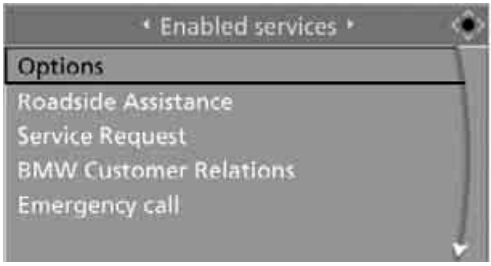
Blocking services*

If you block the services, the connection to BMW Assist is deactivated.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.
4. Turn the controller until "BMW Service settings" is selected and press the controller.



5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Enabled services" is selected and press the controller.
6. Select "Options" and press the controller.



7. Select "Terminate services" and press the controller.

The use of BMW Assist is blocked, and the current vehicle position will not be transmitted during an emergency request*. To cancel blocking and reactivate BMW Assist, see below. This does not affect the contractual agreements.

Reactivate BMW Assist if necessary to log on again.

CarManuals2.com

Activating BMW Assist

BMW Assist must be activated to use the services.

Requirements

- ▷ Make sure that the vehicle can determine its current position. Reception is best when you have an unobstructed view to the sky.
- ▷ Leave radio readiness switched on during the activation process.

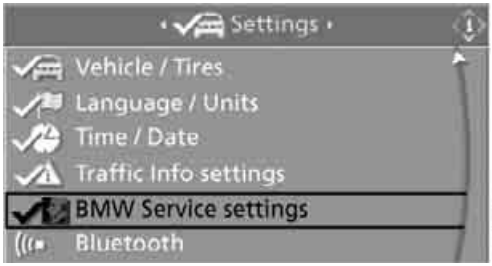
Activating

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.

2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Settings" is selected and press the controller.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

4. Turn the controller until "BMW Service settings" is selected and press the controller.



5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Enabled services" is selected and press the controller.

6. Select "Enable services" and press the controller.
BMW Assist is enabled and the data exchange with the BMW Assist Response Center begins.

CarManuals2.com

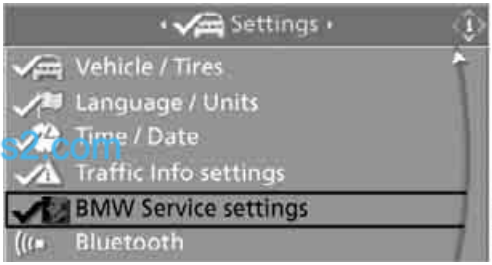
Activation takes a few minutes. The status is displayed on the Control Display. If you open another menu, the activation process continues to run in the background.

Displaying vehicle data

When BMW Assist is activated, the license plate and the vehicle identification number of your vehicle may be displayed.

1. Open the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Select "Settings" and press the controller.

4. Select "BMW Service settings" and press the controller.



5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Profile" is selected and press the controller.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Mobility

This section helps you maintain your mobility by supplying important information on vital topics including fuels and lubricants, wheels and tires, service, maintenance and roadside assistance.

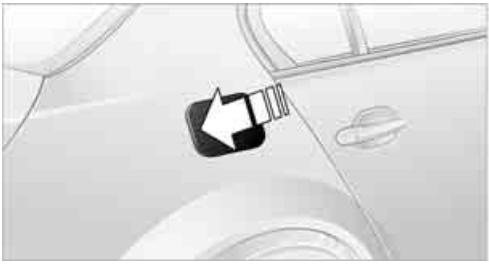
CarManuals2.com

Refueling

Switch off the engine before refueling, otherwise no fuel can be filled into the tank and a message is displayed.◀

When handling fuel, always observe all applicable precautionary measures and regulations. Never transport reserve fuel containers in the vehicle. These could become leaky and cause an explosion or a fire in an accident.◀

Fuel filler door

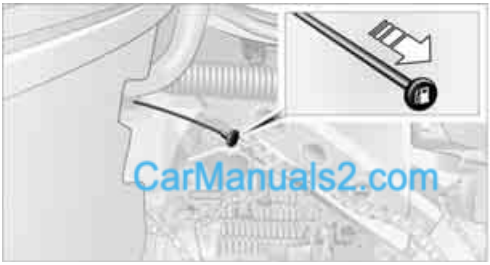


To open and close: press the rear edge of the fuel filler door.

Manual release

If an electrical malfunction should occur, you can unlock the fuel filler door manually.

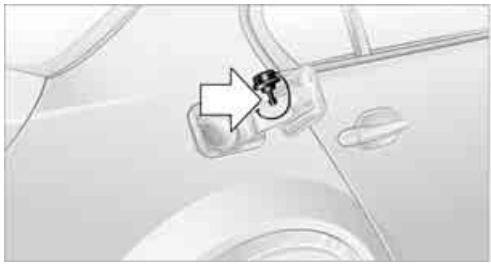
1. In the cargo bay, raise the floor mat and the cover located beneath it.
2. Open the snap fasteners of the right side panel and take off the side panel.
3. Pull the knob with the gas pump symbol.



CarManuals2.com

Observe the following when refueling

When handling fuels, follow the safety precautions posted at the filling station. Otherwise, there is a danger of personal injury or property damage.◀



Place the fuel filler cap in the bracket attached to the fuel filler door.

When refueling, insert the filler nozzle completely into the filler pipe. Avoid raising the filler nozzle during refueling, otherwise this leads to

- premature pump shutoff
- a reduced efficiency of the fuel-vapor recovery system.

The fuel tank is full when the filler nozzle clicks off the first time.

Fuel tank capacity

Approx. 18.5 US gal/70 liters, including the reserve capacity of approx.4 US gal/15 liters.

Refuel as soon as possible once your cruising range falls below 30 miles/ 50 km, otherwise engine functions are not ensured and damage can occur.◀

Fuel filler cap

Closing

Fit the cap and turn it clockwise until you clearly hear a click.

Do not crush the band attached to the cap; otherwise, the cap may not properly seal and fuel vapors can escape.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

A message* is displayed if the cap is loose or missing.

Fuel specifications

CarManuals2.com

Do not use leaded gasoline, otherwise permanent damage to the catalytic converter will result.
Do not use E85, i.e. fuel that consists of 85% ethanol, or Flex Fuel. Otherwise permanent damage to the engine and the fuel supply system will result.◀

Required fuel

Super Premium Gasoline/AKI 93

Always use this premium grade fuel to obtain maximum fuel economy and performance.

The minimum approved fuel grade is AKI 91.

Do not use gasoline below the specified minimum quality, otherwise engine damage can result.◀

Use high-quality brands

Field experience has indicated significant differences in fuel quality: volatility, composition, additives, etc., among gasolines offered for sale in the United States and Canada. Fuels containing up to and including 10% ethanol or other oxygenates with up to 2.8% oxygen by weight, that is, 15% MTBE or 3% methanol plus an equivalent amount of co-solvent, will not void the applicable warranties with respect to defects in materials or workmanship.

The use of poor-quality fuels may result in drivability, starting and stalling problems especially under certain environmental conditions such as high ambient temperature and high altitude.
Should you encounter drivability problems which you suspect could be related to the fuel you are using, we recommend that you respond by switching to a recognized high-quality brand such as gasoline that is advertised as Top Tier Detergent Gasoline.
Failure to comply with these recommendations may also result in unscheduled maintenance.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Wheels and tires

Tire inflation pressure

Information for your safety

The condition of the tires and the maintenance of the specified tire pressure are crucial not only to the tire's service life, but also to driving comfort and most importantly, driving safety.

Checking pressure

Only check tire inflation pressure when the tires are cold. This means after a maximum of 1.25 miles/2 km driving or when the vehicle has been parked for at least 2 hours. When tires are warm, the tire inflation pressure increases.

Check the tire inflation pressure regularly and correct if necessary, including on the spare wheel*: at least twice a month and before starting long trips. Otherwise driving instability or tire damage, and therefore accidents, can result from incorrect tire inflation pressures. Do not drive with a depressurized, i.e. flat, tire. A flat tire will seriously impair your vehicle's handling and braking response. Attempts to drive on a flat tire can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle.◀

After correcting the tire inflation pressure, reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 83, or reset the Tire Pressure Monitor, refer to page 85.◀

Pressure specifications

The tables below provide all the correct inflation pressures for the specified tire sizes at ambient temperature.

The inflation pressures apply to the tire sizes and tire brands respectively approved and recommended by BMW; a list of these is available from your BMW center.◀

For correct identification of the right tire inflation pressure for your tires, observe the following:

- Tire sizes of your vehicle
- Load conditions
- Maximum allowable driving speed

Tire inflation pressures for speeds up to 100 mph/160 km/h

For normal driving up to 100 mph/160 km/h, adjust pressures to the respective tire inflation pressures listed on the following pages in the column Traveling speeds up to max. 100 mph/160 km/h to achieve optimum driving comfort.

These pressure specifications can be found on the door post when you open the driver's door.

The permissible top speed for these tire inflation pressures is 100 mph/160 km/h. Do not exceed this speed, otherwise tire damage and accidents may result.◀

Tire inflation pressures for speeds above 100 mph/160 km/h

In order to drive at maximum speeds in excess of 100 mph/160 km/h, please observe, and, if necessary, adjust tire pressures for speeds exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h from the relevant table on the following pages. Otherwise tire damage and accidents could occur.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Observe all national and local maximum speed limits, otherwise violations of the law could occur.

Tire size	Pressure specifications in psi/kPa					
	Traveling speeds up to max. of 100 mph/160 km/h		Traveling speeds including those exceeding 100 mph/160 km/h			
All pressure specifications in the table are indicated in psi/kilopascal with cold tires. Cold = ambient temperature						
245/45 R 18 100 V XL M+S	35/240	38/260	35/240	38/260	41/280	46/320
255/40 ZR 19	36/250	-	36/250	-	41/280	-
285/35 ZR 19	-	36/250	-	36/250	-	46/320
More details on the permissible load and weights can be found on page 232.						

Tire identification marks

Knowledge of the labeling on the side of the tire makes it easier to identify and choose the right tires.

Tire size

e.g. 285/35 ZR 19
245/45 R 18 100 V

Nominal width in mm
Aspect ratio in %
Belted construction – radial
Rim diameter in inches
Carrying capacity ID-code (not in ZR tires)
Speed code letter (in ZR tires before the R)

Speed letter

Q = up to 100 mph/160 km/h

T = up to 118 mph/190 km/h

H = up to 131 mph/210 km/h

V = up to 150 mph/240 km/h

W = up to 167 mph/270 km/h

Y = up to 186 mph/300 km/h

Z = over 150 mph/240 km/h

CarManuals2.com

Tire Identification Number

Tires with DOT codes meet the guidelines of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

DOT code:

e.g. DOT xxxx xxx 3307

Manufacturer code for tire make
Tire size and tire design
Tire age

Tire age

The manufacturing date of tires is contained in the tire coding: DOT ... 3307 indicates that the tire was manufactured in week 33 of 2007.

BMW recommends that you replace all tires after 6 years at most, even if some tires may last for 10 years. This also concerns the tire of the spare wheel.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Tread wear 200 Traction AA
Temperature A

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

DOT Quality Grades

Tread wear
Traction AA A B C
Temperature A B C

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.◀

Tread wear

The tread wear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 ½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C.
These grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement, as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.◀

Temperature

The temperature grades are A, the highest, B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

CarManuals2.com

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.◀

M+S

Winter and all-season tires.
These have better winter properties than summer tires.

XL

Indicates specially reinforced tires.

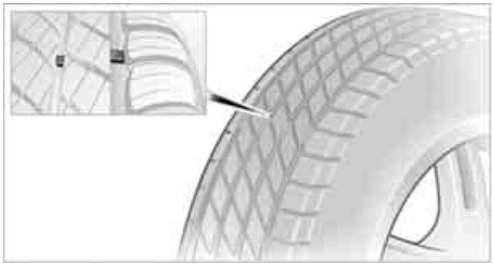
Tire condition

Inspect your tires frequently for tread wear, signs of damage and for foreign objects lodged in the tread. Check the tread depth.

Minimum tread depth

The tread depth should not drop below 0.12 in/3 mm, although, for example, European legislation only specifies a minimum tread depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm. At tread depths below 0.12 in/3 mm there is an increased risk of high-speed hydroplaning, even when only small amounts of water are present on the road surface.
When winter tires wear down past a tread depth of 0.16 in/4 mm, they become perceptibly less suitable for winter conditions. For the sake of safety, new tires should be installed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG



Wear indicators at the tread-groove base, refer to arrow, are distributed over the tire's circumference and are marked on the side of the tire with TWI – Tread Wear Indicator. If the tire tread has been driven down to the wear indicators, a tread depth of 0.063 in/1.6 mm has been reached.

Wheel/tire damage

Please note that low-profile tires cause wheels, tires and suspension parts to be more susceptible to road hazards and consequential damages.
Unusual vibrations encountered during normal vehicle operation can indicate tire failure or some other vehicle defect. This can, for example, be caused by driving over curbs. These kinds of problems may also be signaled by other changes in vehicle response, such as a strong tendency to pull to the left or right.

In these cases, reduce speed immediately and have wheels and tires thoroughly checked. To do so, drive carefully to the nearest BMW center or tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If necessary, have the vehicle towed there. Otherwise, tire damage can be extremely dangerous to vehicle occupants and other road users.◀

New wheels and tires

Have new wheels and tires installed only by your BMW center or tire shop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards. Make sure that the new wheels are balanced.◀

Retreaded tires

BMW does not recommend that you use retreaded tires, as driving safety may be impaired. The causes for this include the possibly different tire casing structures and the often wide variations in their age, which can result in a limited service life.◀

The right wheels and tires

BMW recommends that you use only wheel and tire combinations that BMW has tested and approved for your particular vehicle. Variations in factors such as manufacturing tolerances mean that even wheels and tires with identical official size ratings could actually have different dimensions than the approved units – these differences could lead to body contact, and with it the risk of severe accidents. When selecting the tires, also ensure that they have a sufficient load-carrying capacity. If non-approved wheels and tires are used, BMW cannot evaluate their suitability, and therefore cannot be held liable for driving safety.◀

CarManuals2.com

You can inquire about the right wheel/tire combination at your BMW center.

The correct wheel/tire combination also affects various systems whose function would otherwise be impaired, e.g. ABS or DSC.

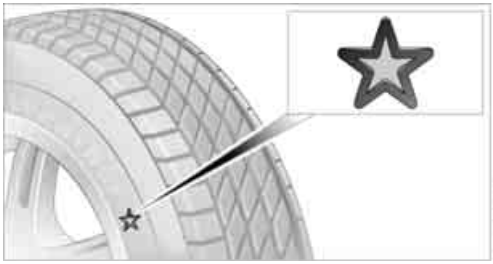
To maintain good handling and vehicle response, use only tires of a single tread configuration from a single manufacturer. Following tire damage, have the original wheel and tire combination remounted on the vehicle as soon as possible.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Wheels with electronics for TPM Tire Pressure Monitor

When mounting new tires or converting from summer to winter tires or vice versa, only use wheels with TPM electronics, otherwise the Tire Pressure Monitor cannot detect a flat tire, refer to page 84. Your BMW center will be happy to advise you on this subject.

Recommended tire brands



Certain tire makes are recommended by BMW depending on the tire size. You can recognize these from the clearly visible BMW marking on the tire sidewall.

When used properly, these tires comply with the most demanding standards for safety and vehicle response.

Special characteristics of winter tires

BMW recommends winter tires for use in cold winter driving conditions. Although all-season M+S tires provide better winter traction than summer tires, they generally fail to provide the same levels of cold-weather performance as winter tires.

Paying attention to speed

Always observe the maximum permissible speed for the winter tires, otherwise tire damage may occur, which can result in accidents.◀

After changing wheels/tires

After changing tires or wheels, the slip detection of the Sequential Manual Transmission must become familiar with the changed state.

Reinitialize the system for this purpose:

1. Move the selector lever into the idling position N on a straight stretch of road at a speed between 20 mph/30 km/h and 90 mph/150 km/h.
2. Pull both shift paddles for approx. 2 seconds.

If you do not carry out initialization, the system will automatically learn the changed state gradually during driving. This may be noticeable from the clutch opening and closing briefly.

Storage

Store wheels and tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Always protect tires against all contact with oil, grease and fuels. Do not exceed the maximum tire inflation pressure indicated on the side wall of the tire.

Rotating wheels between axles

BMW does not recommend moving the front wheels to the rear or vice versa, as otherwise the handling characteristics may be impaired. With tires of different makes and types* such a change is not permissible.

Snow chains*

BMW only tests certain fine-link snow chains, classifies them as road-safe and recommends them. Consult your BMW center for more information.

Use is only permitted in pairs, with winter tires of the size 245/45 R 18 on the rear wheels.

Observe the manufacturer's instructions when mounting snow chains. Do not exceed a speed of 30 mph/50 km/h with the chains mounted.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Make sure that the snow chains are always sufficiently tensioned. Retighten as needed in accordance with the chain manufacturer's specifications.

▷ After mounting snow chains, do not initialize the Flat Tire Monitor, otherwise incorrect displays can occur.
After mounting or removing snow chains, the slip detection of the Sequential Manual Transmission must become familiar with the altered state. To do this, reinitialize the system, refer to After changing wheels/tires.◀

CarManuals2.com

Under the hood

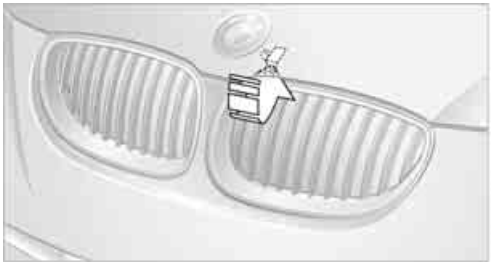
Never attempt to perform any service or repair operations on your vehicle without the required professional technical training.
If you do not know what repair procedures to follow, have work on your vehicle done only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. If this work is not carried out properly, there is a danger of subsequent damage and related safety hazards.◀

Hood

Releasing

Pull lever.

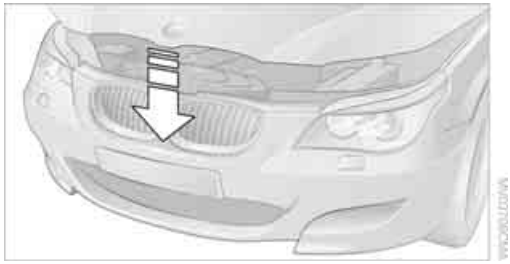
Opening



Press the release handle and open the hood.

You cannot start off with the hood open.◀

Closing



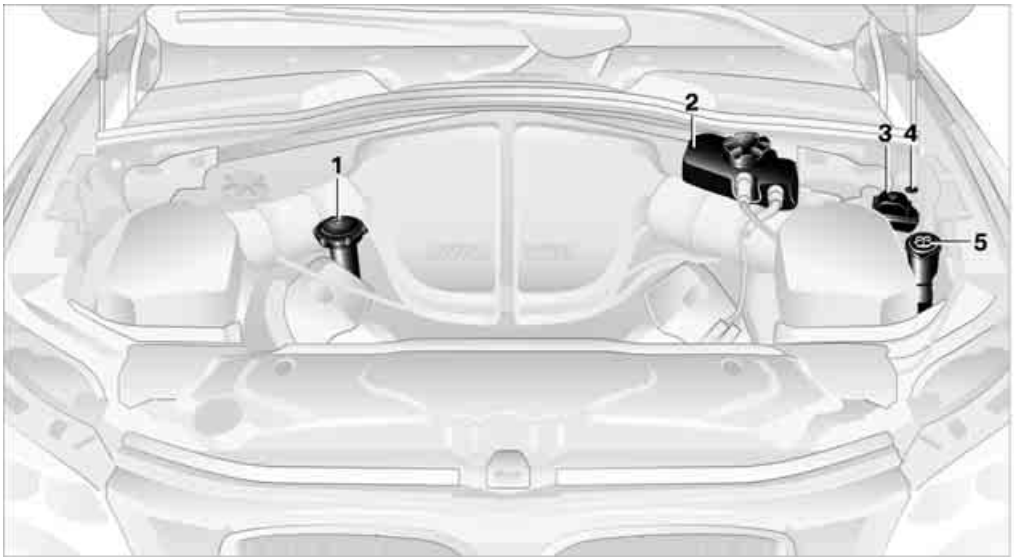
Close the hood from a height of approx. 16 in/ 40 cm with momentum. It must be clearly heard to engage.

Make sure that the closing path of the hood is clear, otherwise injuries may result.
If you see any signs that the hood is not completely closed while driving your vehicle, you should stop at once and close it securely.◀

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Engine compartment



1 Filler neck for engine oil, refer to Adding engine oil, page 210

2 Expansion tank for coolant, refer to page 211

3 Starting-aid terminal, refer to page 224

4 Body ground/negative terminal

5 Filler neck for washer fluid of the headlamp and windshield cleaning systems, refer to page 64

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Engine oil

The engine oil consumption is dependent on driving style and driving conditions.

Checking engine oil level

Your vehicle is equipped with an electronic oil level check.

The oil level can be displayed when the engine is at operating temperature. Constant short-distance driving or a very sporty driving style can make it impossible for a measurement to be taken.

Displays in instrument cluster

You can display the current oil level in the instrument cluster.

1 Oil level

2 Maximum marking

3 Minimum marking

4 BC button

Press the button **4** in the turn signal lever repeatedly until the display for the oil level appears in the instrument cluster.

▷ Manual transmission: the engine oil level will be shown in the lower display.◀

The oil level must be between the two marks.

A new measurement is automatically taken after each engine start.

Possible displays

1 Oil level OK

2 Oil level is being determined.
This process takes about 1 minute when stopped on a level surface.
If the engine oil has been topped off, the measurement of the oil level can take up to 30 minutes.

3 Oil level at minimum:
Add a maximum of 1 US quart/1 liter of engine oil at the next opportunity, refer to Adding engine oil below Add at least 0.5 US quart/0.5 liter. Otherwise the oil level control may not display the new value correctly.
If the oil level displayed is below minimum, add engine oil immediately. Failure to do so may lead to engine damage.

4 Oil level too high

⚠ Have the vehicle checked immediately, otherwise engine damage may result if too much oil has been added.◀

5 No value can be determined at this time. Engine is not yet at operating temperature.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Fast measurement

In addition to the automatic measurement, you can also determine the current oil level manually, e.g. after adding engine oil, but with a lower degree of measuring accuracy.

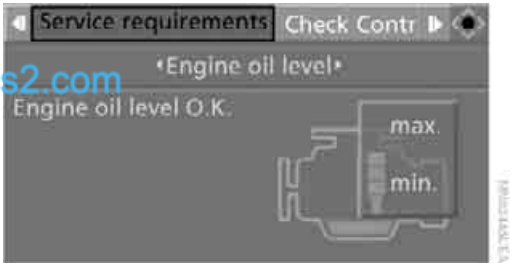
1. With the engine at operating temperature, i.e. after at least 6 miles/10 km of uninterrupted driving, park the vehicle in a horizontal position.
2. Allow the engine to run at idle.
3. Press the BC button on the turn signal lever repeatedly until the oil level display is shown in the instrument cluster.
4. Press the BC button for at least 2 seconds. The oil level is determined. A clock symbol is displayed during the measurement.
5. After approx. 1 minute the current oil level is displayed.

Displaying via iDrive

iDrive, for operating principle refer to page 16.

1. Press the **MENU** button.
   This opens the start menu.
2. Press the controller to open the i menu.
3. Turn the controller until "Info sources" is selected and press the controller.

4. Turn the controller until "Service Info" is selected and press the controller.
5. Change to upper field if necessary. Turn the controller until "Service requirements" is selected and press the controller.



6. Change to the second field from the top if necessary. Turn the controller until "Engine oil level" is selected and press the controller. The oil level is displayed.

Possible messages

▷ "Engine oil level O.K."

▷ "No measurement available: Updating engine oil level measurement...":
Engine oil level is being measured. This process can take approx. 1 minute when stopped on a level surface with the engine running and approx. 5 minutes while driving.
If the engine oil has been topped off, the measurement of the oil level can take up to 30 minutes.

▷ "Oil level at the minimum! Refill with 1 quart of engine oil.":
Add a maximum of 1 US quart/1 liter of engine oil at the next opportunity, refer to Adding engine oil below. Add at least 0.5 US quart/0.5 liter. Otherwise the oil level control may not display the new value correctly.
If the oil level displayed is below minimum, add engine oil immediately. Failure to do so may lead to engine damage.

▷ "Engine oil level too high"*:

⚠ Have the vehicle checked immediately, otherwise engine damage may result if too much oil has been added.◀

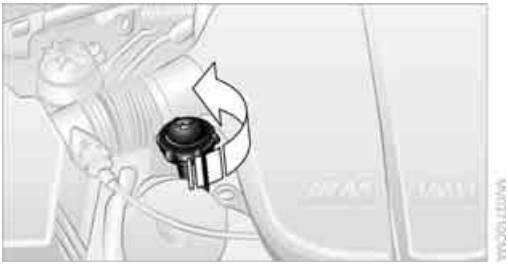
▷ "Please observe recalculated service interval for engine oil":

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Do not add engine oil. Before continuing to drive, note the recalculated remaining mileage until the next oil change service, refer to Service requirements on page 69. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Adding engine oil



Do not add oil until a value slightly above the minimum of 0.0 US quarts/liters is displayed by the oil level measurement. In this area a message is also shown on the Control Display.

Add oil within the next 125 miles/200 km, otherwise the engine could be damaged.
Add a maximum of 1 US quart/1 liter of oil, otherwise the engine may be damaged by adding too much oil.
Add at least 0.5 US quart/0.5 liter of oil, otherwise the oil level check cannot reliably display the current oil level.◀

Please conduct a fast measurement after adding engine oil to check the oil quantity added and to update the display.◀

Continuous exposure to used oil has caused cancer in laboratory testing.
For this reason, any skin areas that come into contact with oil should be thoroughly washed with soap and water.
Keep oil, grease etc. out of reach of children and observe the warnings on the containers to prevent health risks.◀

Oil change

Have oil changed only at your BMW center or at a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

CarManuals2.com

Approved engine oils

The quality of the engine oil selected has critical significance for the operation and service life of an engine. BMW continuously approves specific oils after confirming their suitability for use in its vehicles with extensive testing.

Do not use oil additives, as these may result in engine damage.◀

Your BMW center will be happy to answer detailed questions on BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil or approved synthetic oils.◀

You can also call BMW of North America at 1-800-831-1117 or visit the website at www.bmwusa.com to obtain this information.

Viscosity grades

Viscosity is a measure of an oil's flow rating and is specified in SAE grades.

Approved oils belong to the SAE grade 10W-60.◀

Alternative oil grades

If BMW High Performance Synthetic Oil is unavailable, you can add small quantities of other synthetic oils between oil changes.
Only use oils with the following specifications:

- Viscosity
  preferred: SAE 10W-60;
  alternative: SAE 10W-40, SAE 5W-50 or SAE 10W-50
- Specification
  API SJ/CF, API SK/CF or higher

Low ambient temperatures

The oils used by BMW from the factory for your vehicle model can be used at virtually all ambient temperatures. However, if the vehicle is operated for a longer period at temperatures below –4 °F /–20 °C, your BMW center will be happy to recommend a suitable oil.

BMW recommends Castrol

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Coolant

Do not add coolant to the cooling system when the engine is hot. Escaping coolant can cause burns.◀

Coolant is composed of equal parts water and a coolant additive. Not all commercially available additives are suitable for your BMW. Ask your BMW center for suitable additives.

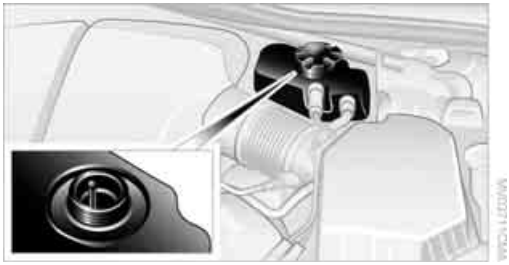
CarManuals2.com

Only use suitable additives, otherwise engine damage may result. The additives present a health hazard; observe the instructions on the containers.◀

Comply with the appropriate environmental protection regulations when disposing of coolant additives.◀

Checking coolant level

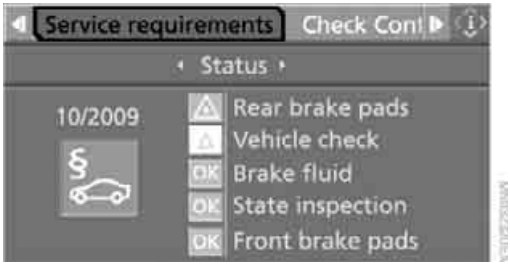
1. Do not open the hood until the engine has cooled down.
2. Turn the cap of the expansion tank counterclockwise to allow any accumulated pressure to escape, then continue turning to open.
3. The coolant level is correct when the upper end of the float rod is at the same height as the upper edge of the filler neck, also refer to the drawing next to the filler neck.



4. If the coolant is low, slowly add coolant up to the specified level – do not overfill.
5. Turn the cap until there is an audible click.
6. Have the reason for the coolant loss eliminated as soon as possible.

Maintenance

BMW maintenance system



The BMW maintenance system supports the preservation of the traffic and operating safety of your BMW. The ultimate objective is to ensure economical maintenance by providing the ideal service for your vehicle.

Should the day come when you decide to sell your BMW, a complete dealer service history will prove to be an asset of inestimable value.

CBS Condition Based Service

Sensors and special algorithms take the different driving conditions of your BMW into account. Condition Based Service uses this to determine the current and future service requirements. By letting you define a service and maintenance regimen that reflects your own individual requirements, the system builds the basis for trouble-free driving.

You can set the Control Display to show remaining distances and times of selected maintenance intervals and legally mandated deadlines, refer to page 69:

- Engine oil
- Brake pads, front and rear separately
- Brake fluid
- Vehicle check
- Legally mandated inspections depending on local regulations

CarManuals2.com

Service data in remote control

Your vehicle stores the information required maintenance continuously in the remote control during driving. After accessing the data stored in the remote control, your BMW Service Advisor can suggest precisely the right array of service procedures for your own individual vehicle. You should therefore hand over the remote control you last used to drive to the BMW Service Advisor when you take your vehicle in for service.

Make sure the date is set correctly, refer to page 76, otherwise the effectiveness of CBS Condition Based Service is not ensured.◀

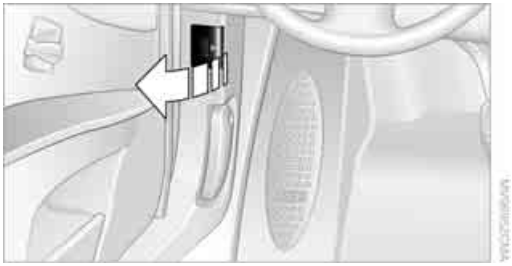
Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models

Please consult your Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models for additional information on service requirements.

BMW recommends that you have service and repair operations performed at your BMW center.
Take the time to ensure that these service procedures are confirmed by entries in your vehicle's Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models and Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models. These entries verify that your vehicle has received the specified regular maintenance.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Socket for OBD Onboard Diagnostics interface



Components which are decisive for the exhaust-gas composition can be checked via the OBD socket with a device.

This socket is located to the left on the driver's side, on the underside of the instrument panel under a cover.

Exhaust-gas values

The warning lamp lights up. The exhaust-gas values worsen. Have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Display of the previously described malfunction in Canadian models.

The lamp flashes under certain conditions. This is a sign of excessive misfiring of the engine. In this case you should reduce speed and drive to the nearest BMW center as soon as possible. Heavy engine misfiring causes serious damage to the emission-relevant components, especially the catalytic converter, within a short time.

▷ If the fuel filler cap is not properly tightened, the OBD system will assume that fuel vapor escapes. Then a display lights up. If the cap is then tightened, the display will go out within a few days.◀

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle may be equipped with one or several measuring and diagnosis modules, or with a device for recording or transmitting certain vehicle data or information. If you have also subscribed to BMW Assist, certain vehicle data can be transmitted or recorded to enable corresponding services.

CarManuals2.com

Care

Important information on the care and maintenance of your BMW is contained in the Caring for your vehicle brochure.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Replacing components

Onboard toolkit

The onboard toolkit is located in the luggage compartment lid.

Loosen the wing nut to open.

Wiper blade replacement

1. Fold the wiper arm out and grasp firmly.
2. Press the safety tabs together while sliding the wiper blade toward the front to disengage it.
3. Mount the new wiper blade and slide in until it is heard to engage.

Lamps and bulbs

Lamps and bulbs make an essential contribution to vehicle safety. You must be duly diligent in replacing them. BMW recommends having your BMW center perform any work that you do not feel competent to perform yourself or that is not described here.

Never touch the glass of new bulbs with your bare fingers, as even minute amounts of contamination will burn into the bulb's surface and reduce its service life. Use a clean cloth, napkin, etc., or hold the bulb by its metal socket.◀

A selection of replacement bulbs is available at your BMW center.

Only replace bulbs when cool, as otherwise you may be burned.◀

Whenever you perform any work on the electrical system, turn off the systems/consumers involved to prevent short circuits from occurring. To avoid possible injury or equipment damage when replacing bulbs, observe any instructions provided by the bulb manufacturer.◀

For care and maintenance of the headlamps, please follow the instructions in the separate Caring for your vehicle brochure.

For bulbs for which changing is not described, and for checking and adjusting headlamp aim, please contact your BMW center.◀

Light-emitting diodes LEDs

Light-emitting diodes installed behind translucent lenses serve as the light source for many of the controls and displays in your vehicle. These light-emitting diodes, which operate using a concept similar to that applied in conventional lasers, are officially designated as Class 1 light-emitting diodes.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Do not remove the covers, and never stare into the unfiltered light for several hours, as irritation of the retina could result.◀

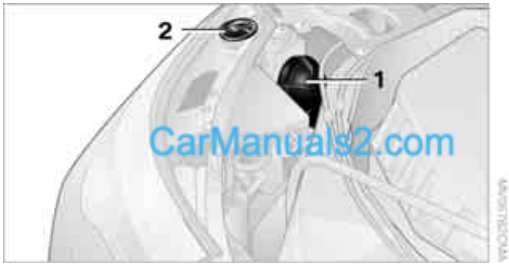
Xenon lamps

The service life of these bulbs is very long and the probability of a failure is very low, provided that they are not switched on and off an unusual number of times.

Have work on the xenon lighting system performed only by your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel. Due to the high voltage present in the system, there is a danger of fatal injuries when work is carried out improperly.◀

Access to lamps

The illustration shows the left-hand side of the engine compartment.



1 Cover cap for parking and roadside parking lamps, daytime running lamps

2 Sealing cap for turning lamps*

To remove the covers:

▷ Parking lamps and roadside parking lamps, daytime running lamps: turn the cover cap to the left and remove.

▷ Turning lamps: turn the sealing cap to the left and remove.

Parking lamps and roadside parking lamps, daytime running lamps

H8 bulb, 35 watts

1. Turn the bulb in the direction of the arrow, in the opposite direction on the other side, and remove.

2. Remove the connector and replace the bulb.

Turning lamps*

H3 bulb, 55 watts

1. Remove the sealing cap, refer to Access to lamps.
2. Push the locking bar to the side out of the anchor and fold upward.

3. Remove the connector and take out the bulb.
4. Replace the bulb and reinstall.
5. Fold down the locking bar and engage it.
6. Reconnect the connector.
7. Mount the sealing cap. Watch the markings on the bulb when doing so.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Turn signals, front

21-watt bulb, PY21W

1. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove.

2. Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.

Side-mounted turn signals

5-watt bulb, W5W

1. Press back against the front edge of the lamp with the tip of your finger, then pivot it out.

2. Turn the bulb holder to the left and remove.
3. Remove the bulb for replacement.

Side marker lamps, front and rear

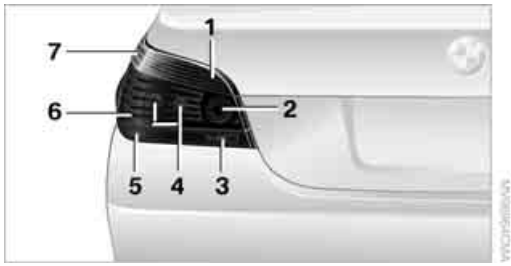
To replace, please go to your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Tail lamps

▷ Turn signals **1**, tail lamps **6** and side marker lamps **7** are designed using LED technology. In the event of a malfunction, please go to your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

▷ Backup lamps: 16-watt bulb, W16W

▷ Other lamps: 21-watt bulb, P21W



1 Turn signal
2 Tail lamp and brake lamp
3 Backup lamp
4 Brake lamp
5 Reflector
6 Tail lamp
7 Side marker lamp

CarManuals2.com

Center brake lamp

This lamp uses LED technology for operation. In the event of a malfunction, please go to your BMW center or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel.

Fender-mounted lamps

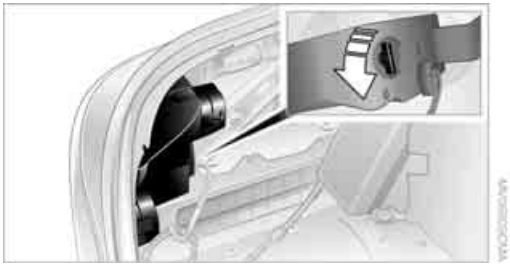
The illustration shows the left-hand side of the cargo bay.

All the bulbs are integrated into a central bulb fitting.

1. Lift up floor mat.
2. Undo the quick-release fasteners of the side panel and pull out the panel.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

3. Turn the lock to the left and remove the bulb holder.



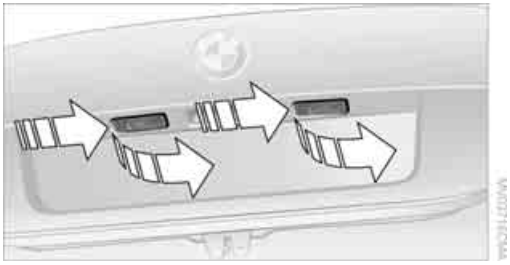
4. Backup lamps:
   Remove and replace the bulb.
   Other lamps:
   Apply gentle pressure to the bulb while turning it to the left for removal and replacement.

Lamps in luggage compartment lid

License plate lamp

5-watt bulb, C5W

1. Insert screwdriver into the slot and press to the right, refer to arrows. This releases the lamp.



2. Remove the lamp and replace the bulb.

Repairing flat tire with M Mobility System

To repair a flat tire, an M Mobility System is provided in the BMW M5. Using this system you can apply a sealant in the inside of the tire, seal off the damaged area, restore the tire inflation pressure and then continue driving.

CarManuals2.com

Safety measures in case of a breakdown: park the vehicle as far as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground. Switch on the hazard warning flashers.
Apply the handbrake and engage the first or reverse gear. Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
If a warning triangle* or portable hazard warning lamp* is required, set it up on the roadside at an appropriate distance from the rear of the vehicle. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.◀

Preparation

The M Mobility System is located in the cargo bay under the floor panel flap.

Do not remove foreign bodies which have penetrated the tire if possible.

Corresponding information on using the M Mobility System are also provided on the device.◀

Before using the M Mobility System, observe the information on the sealant bottle.◀

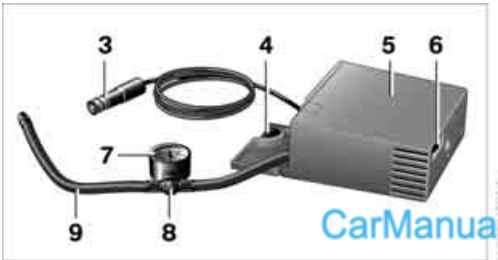
Pull the sticker for the speed limit off the sealant bottle and apply it to the steering wheel.

▷ Please observe the best-by date on the sealant bottle.◀

The M Mobility System consists of

1 Sealant bottle and sticker with speed limit
2 Filling hose from sealant bottle to wheel

Model with pressure gauge on hose*

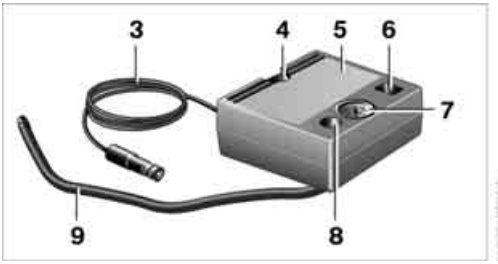


CarManuals2.com

3 Connector and cable for lighter socket
4 Mounting for sealing bottle
5 Compressor
6 On/Off switch
7 Pressure gauge for indicating tire inflation pressure
8 Screw on pressure gauge for reducing tire inflation pressure
9 Connecting hose for connecting compressor and sealant bottle or compressor and wheel

Connector, cable and connecting hose are stored in the compressor housing.

Model with pressure gauge integrated in housing*



3 Connector and cable for lighter socket
4 Mounting for sealing bottle
5 Compressor
6 On/Off switch
7 Pressure gauge for indicating tire inflation pressure
8 Button for reducing tire inflation pressure
9 Connecting hose for connecting compressor and sealant bottle or compressor and wheel

Connector, cable and connecting hose are stored on underside of compressor.

Using M Mobility System

To repair a flat tire with the M Mobility System, proceed as follows:

▷ Fill sealant into wheel, refer to page 218.

▷ Distribute sealant, refer to page 219.

▷ Produce tire inflation pressure, refer to page 219.

Filling sealant into wheel

⚠ Strictly comply with the specified order, otherwise highly pressurized sealant could escape.◀

1. Shake sealant bottle.
2. Screw hose **9** onto connection of sealant bottle.
3. For model with pressure gauge on hose: Make sure that screw **8** on pressure gauge is closed.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

4. Screw dust cap off valve of defective wheel and screw filling hose **2** of sealant bottle onto valve.
5. Insert sealant bottle on compressor housing so that it is positioned upright.

6. Make sure that the device is switched off, position 0.
7. Insert connector **3** into lighter socket in vehicle interior, refer to page 108.
8. With the ignition switched on:
   Switch on the device and allow to run for approx. 3 minutes to fill wheel with sealant. It is not important what inflation pressure the tire has after filling.
9. Switch off device.
10. Remove connecting hose from connection of sealant bottle and tire valve.
    Stow the M Mobility System in the vehicle again.

Distributing sealant

Immediately drive approx. 2 miles/3 km so that sealant is evenly distributed in tire.

Do not exceed a maximum speed of 35 mph/60 km/h. Do not drop below 12 mph/20 km/h if possible.◀

Producing tire inflation pressure

1. After approx. 2 miles/3 km, stop at suitable location.
2. Screw compressor hose **9** directly onto tire valve.
3. Insert connector **3** in lighter socket in vehicle interior.
4. Correct tire inflation pressure to 29 psi/ 200 kPa. With the ignition switched on:
   ▷ Increase inflation pressure: switch on compressor, position I. To check currently set inflation pressure, briefly switch off device.

   Do not allow compressor to run longer than 10 minutes, otherwise the device will overheat and may be damaged.◀

   ▷ Reduce inflation pressure: press button **8** or turn screw **8** on pressure gauge.

If the inflation pressure is not held, drive the vehicle again, refer to Distributing sealant. Then repeat steps 1 to 4 once.
Using the M Mobility System can be ineffective with tire damage from a size of approx. 0.16 in/ 4 mm. Please contact the nearest BMW center, refer to page 224, or a workshop that works according to BMW repair procedures with correspondingly trained personnel if the tire cannot be made ready for driving with the M Mobility System.◀

The tire inflation pressure must be at least 29 psi/200 kPa. Otherwise do not continue driving.◀

Continue driving

Do not exceed the permissible maximum speed of 50 mph/80 km/h, otherwise accidents can occur.◀

Reinitialize the Flat Tire Monitor.
For details, refer to page 83.
Have the defective tire and the sealant bottle of the M Mobility System replaced as soon as possible.◀

Changing wheels*

Safety precautions in the event of a flat tire or wheel change: park the vehicle as far as possible from passing traffic and on solid ground. Switch on the hazard warning flashers. Apply the handbrake and shift into first gear or reverse with the manual transmission, or move

CarManuals2.com

the selector lever into a drive position with the sequential transmission.
Have all vehicle occupants get out of the vehicle and ensure that they remain outside the immediate area in a safe place, such as behind a guardrail.
If a warning triangle* or portable hazard warning lamp* is required, set it up on the roadside at an appropriate distance from the rear of the vehicle. Comply with all safety guidelines and regulations.
Change the wheel only on a level, firm surface which is not slippery. The vehicle or the jack could slip to the side if you attempt to raise the vehicle on a soft or slippery surface such as snow, ice, tiles, etc.
Position the jack on a firm support surface.
Do not use a wooden block or similar object as a support base for the jack, as this would prevent it from extending to its full support height and reduce its load-carrying capacity.
To avoid serious or fatal injury: never lie under the vehicle, and never start the engine while it is supported by the jack.◀

What you will need

To avoid rattling noises later on, note the positions of the tools before removing them, then return them to their initial positions after completing work.

1 Chock*

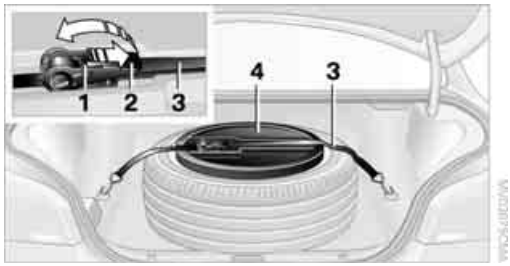
2 Vehicle jack*

3 Lug wrench*

The tools are located in the hollow of the spare wheel.

Spare wheel*

1. Pull back lock **1**, fold open tensioning lock **2** completely and loosen the belt **3**.



2. Remove the cover **4**.
3. Remove the tool mount form the spare tire and stow the belt in the net bag included if necessary.
4. Remove the spare wheel.

Preparing wheel change

1. Observe the safety precautions above.
2. Prevent the vehicle from rolling:
   Place the chock behind the front wheel on the other side of the vehicle, or on inclines, in front of this wheel. On steeply inclined roads, always secure the vehicle against rolling.
3. Loosen the lug bolts a half turn.

CarManuals2.com

Jacking up vehicle

1. Position the vehicle jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel so that the entire surface of the jack base rests on the ground perpendicularly beneath the jacking point.

   ⚠ The vehicle jack is designed for changing wheels only. Do not attempt to raise another vehicle model with it or to raise any load of any kind. To do so could cause accidents and personal injury.◀

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

2. Guide the jack head into the rectangular recess of the jacking point when cranking up, refer to illustration detail.

CarManuals2.com

3. Jack the vehicle up until the wheel you are changing is raised from the ground.

Mounting a wheel

1. Unscrew the lug bolts and remove the wheel.
2. Remove accumulations of mud or dirt from the mounting surfaces of the wheel and hub. Also clean the lug bolts.
3. Position the new wheel or spare wheel. Secure the wheel by screwing at least two lug bolts into opposite bolt holes.
   When you mount wheels other than Genuine BMW light-alloy wheels, different lug bolts may also be required.
4. Screw in the remaining lug bolts. Tighten all the bolts securely in a diagonal pattern.
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack from beneath the vehicle.

After mounting

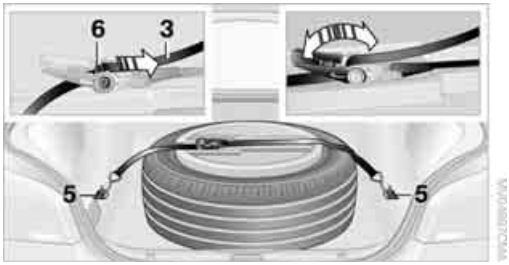
1. Tighten the lug bolts in a diagonal pattern.

   To ensure safety, always have the lug bolts checked with a calibrated torque wrench as soon as possible to ensure that they are tightened to the specified torque. Otherwise, incorrectly tightened lug bolts are a hidden safety risk. The tightening torque is 88.5 lb ft/120 Nm.◀
2. Check and correct the tire inflation pressure at the earliest opportunity.

   Protect valve stems with valve stem seal caps against dirt and contamination. Dirt in valve stems is a frequent source of gradual air loss.◀
3. Initialize the Flat Tire Monitor, refer to page 83, and the Sequential Manual Transmission, refer to After changing wheels/tires on page 204.
4. Replace the damaged tire as soon as possible and have the new wheel/tire balanced.

Stowing wheel and tools

1. Lay the wheel in the tool mounting.
2. Lay the cover on the mounting.
3. Center the wheel and cover relative to the lashing eyes **5**.
4. Hook the belt into the lashing eyes 5.



5. Completely open the tensioning lock.
6. Thread the belt **3** through the axis **6** of the tensioning lock without twisting it and tension it by hand.
7. Tighten the belt firmly with the tensioning lock by opening and closing the lock several times.
8. Fold the tensioning lock closed and stow the protruding belt end.

Driving with spare wheel

With certain wheel-and-tire combinations the size of the spare wheel differs from that of the other wheels. The spare wheel is equivalent to them in all load and speed ranges. However, to restore the original state, the normal wheel should be remounted as soon as possible.◀

Vehicle battery

Battery care

The battery is 100% maintenance-free, i.e., the electrolyte will last for the life of the battery when the vehicle is operated in a temperate climate. Your BMW center will be glad to advise in all matters concerning the battery.

Charging battery

Only charge the battery in the vehicle via the terminals in the engine compartment with the engine switched off. Connections, refer to Jump starting on page 224.

Disposal

Have old batteries disposed of by your BMW center or hand them in to a recycling center. Maintain the battery in an upright position for transport and storage. Always restrain the battery to prevent it from tipping over during transport.◀

Power failure

After a temporary power supply interruption, some settings are lost. Take the following steps:

- ▷ Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory
  Store the positions again, refer to page 43.
- ▷ Time and date
  Reset, refer to text starting on page 75.
- ▷ Radio
  Store stations again, refer to page 154.
- ▷ Navigation system
  Wait until the system starts, refer to page 122.

Fuses

Never attempt to repair a blown fuse and do not replace a defective fuse with a substitute of another color or amperage rating, as this could lead to a circuit overload, ultimately resulting in a fire in the vehicle.◀

Spare fuses, plastic tweezers and fuse allocation diagram are located in the compartment for the onboard tool kit, refer to page 214.

In glove compartment

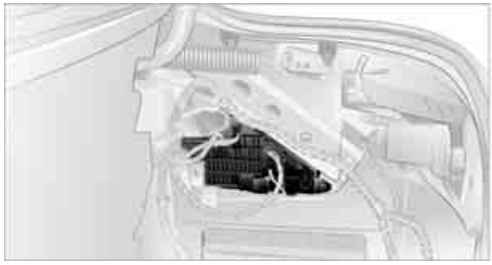
1. Release both quick-release fasteners.

2. Fold the cover forward or remove.

In cargo bay

Carmanuals2.com

1. Lift up floor mat.
2. Release the quick-release fastener of the right side panel and pull out the panel.



Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Giving and receiving assistance

Emergency request

Conditions for an emergency request:

CarManuals2.com

- ▷ Full preparation package mobile phone. With this equipment, an emergency request is still possible when no mobile phone is paired in the vehicle.
- ▷ BMW Assist is activated. Activating BMW Assist, refer to page 194.
- ▷ Radio readiness is activated.
- ▷ The BMW Assist system is logged on to a mobile phone network.
- ▷ The emergency request system is operable.

Once your BMW Assist subscription expires, the BMW Assist system can be deactivated by a BMW center without you having to visit a workshop. Once the BMW Assist system has been deactivated, emergency requests are not possible. The BMW Assist system can be reactivated by a BMW center after signing a new contract.

Initiating an emergency request

1. Briefly press protective cover to open. Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the arrangement of the switches and indicator lamps may differ somewhat.

2. Press the SOS button for at least 2 seconds.

The LED in the button lights up. As soon as the voice connection to the BMW Assist Response Center has been established, the LED flashes.

Even if you are unable to answer, the BMW Assist Response Center can take further steps to help you under certain conditions.

If conditions allow, remain in the vehicle until the connection has been established. You will then be able to provide a detailed description of the situation.

If the current position of your vehicle can be determined, it will be transmitted to the BMW Assist Response Center.

If the LED is flashing but the BMW Assist Response Center cannot be heard over the hands-free system, it is possible that the hands-free system is malfunctioning. You may still be heard by the BMW Assist Response Center, however.

Under certain conditions, an emergency request is automatically initiated immediately after a severe accident. The automatic collision notification is not affected by the button being pressed.

For technical reasons, the emergency request cannot be guaranteed under unfavorable conditions.

▷ You can also use other services of BMW Assist with this button, refer to page 189.◀

Warning triangle*

The warning triangle is located in the luggage compartment lid.

Loosen the wing nut to open.

First-aid kit*

Some of the articles contained in the first-aid kit have a limited service life. Therefore, check the expiration dates of the contents regularly and replace the contents concerned in good time if necessary.

CarManuals2.com

The first-aid kit is located in the luggage compartment lid.

Loosen the wing nut to open.

Roadside Assistance*

The Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group offers you assistance in the event of a breakdown around the clock, including on weekends and public holidays.

The phone numbers of the Roadside Assistance in your home country can be found in the Contact brochure.

With BMW Assist you can contact the Roadside Assistance of the BMW Group for assistance in the event of a breakdown directly via iDrive, refer to page 190.

Jump starting

When your battery is discharged, you can use two jumper cables to start your BMW with power from the battery in a second vehicle. You can also use the same method to help start another vehicle. Use only jumper cables with fully-insulated clamp handles.

⚠ To avoid the risk of potentially fatal injury, always avoid all contact with electrical components while the engine is running. Carefully adhere to the following sequence, both to prevent damage to one or both vehicles, and to guard against possible personal injuries.◀

Preparation

1. Check whether the battery of the other vehicle has a voltage of 12 Volts and approximately the same capacitance in Ah. This information can be found on the battery.
2. Switch off the engine of the assisting vehicle.
3. Switch off any electrical systems and components in both vehicles.

⚠ There must not be any contact between the bodies of the two vehicles, otherwise there is a danger of shorting.◀

Connecting jumper cables

⚠ To avoid personal injury from sparks, follow this sequence when connecting jumper cables.◀

In your BMW M5, the so-called jump-starting terminal in the engine compartment serves as a positive terminal for the battery, also refer to engine compartment overview on page 207. The cover cap is marked with a +.

1. Fold open the cover of the BMW jump-starting terminal. To do so, pull the tab.

2. Attach one end of the jumper cable plus/+ to the positive terminal of the battery or a jump-starting terminal of the vehicle providing assistance.
3. Attach the second end of the cable to the positive terminal of the battery or to a starting-aid terminal of the vehicle to be started.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

4. Attach one end of the jumper cable minus/– to the negative terminal of the battery or to an engine or body ground of the assisting vehicle.
   Your BMW M5 has a special nut as body ground or negative terminal.

5. Attach the second end of the cable to the negative terminal of the battery or to the engine or body ground of the vehicle to be started.

Starting engine

1. Start the engine on the assisting vehicle and allow it to run at idle for several minutes at slightly increased speed.
2. Start the engine on the other vehicle in the usual way.
   If the first starting attempt is not successful, wait a few minutes before another attempt in order to allow the discharged battery to recharge.
3. Let the engines run for a few minutes.
4. Disconnect the jumper cables by reversing the connection sequence.

Check the battery and recharge if necessary.

Never use spray fluids to start the engine.◀

Tow-starting and towing

Observe applicable laws and regulations for tow-starting and towing.◀

Do not transport any passengers other than the driver in a vehicle that is being towed.◀

CarManuals2.com

Using tow fitting

Always keep the screw-in tow fitting with the vehicle. It can be screwed in at the front or rear of the BMW.

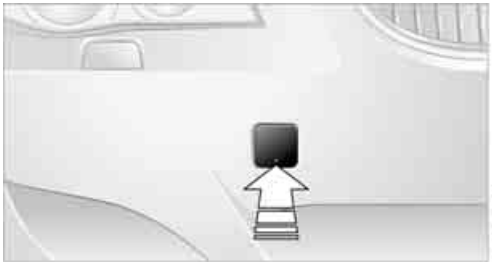
It is located in the toolkit in the luggage compartment lid, refer to page 214.

Use only the tow fitting provided with the vehicle and screw it all the way in. Use the tow fitting for towing only on roads. Avoid lateral loading of the tow fitting, e.g. do not lift the vehicle by the tow fitting. Otherwise damage to the tow fitting and the vehicle can occur.◀

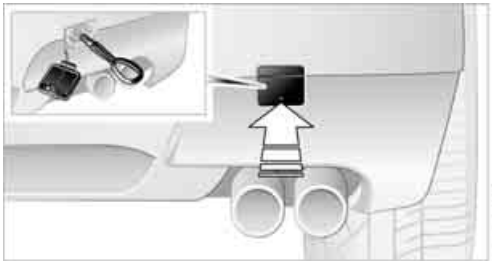
Access to screw thread

Press the arrow symbol on the cover in the bumper.

Front



Rear



Being towed

Make sure that the ignition is switched on, refer to page 56, otherwise the low beams, tail lamps, turn signals and windshield wipers would not be available. Do not tow the vehicle with the rear axle raised, as otherwise the steering can turn to the left or right. When the engine is stopped, there is no power assist.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

This then requires increased effort for braking and steering.◀

Switch on the hazard warning flashers depending on the local regulations. If the electrical system fails, mark the vehicle to be towed, e.g. with a sign or warning triangle in the rear window.

Manual transmission

Gearshift lever in neutral position.

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic

⚠ Make sure that selector lever position N is engaged with the ignition switched on, as otherwise the engine can be damaged during towing.◀

Towing methods

⚠ Do not lift vehicle by tow fitting or body and chassis parts, otherwise damage may result.◀

In some countries, towing with tow bars or ropes in public traffic is not permitted. Familiarize yourself with the regulations on towing in the respective country.

With tow bar

⚠ The towing vehicle may not be lighter than the vehicle to be towed, otherwise it will not be possible to reliably control vehicle response.◀

The tow fittings used should be on the same side on both vehicles. Should it prove impossible to avoid mounting the tow bar at an offset angle, please observe the following:

- ▷ Clearance and maneuvering capability will be sharply limited during cornering.
- ▷ When mounted at an angle, the tow bar will exert lateral forces, tending to push the vehicle sideways.

⚠ Only attach the tow bar to the tow fittings, as attachment to other vehicle parts can lead to damage.◀

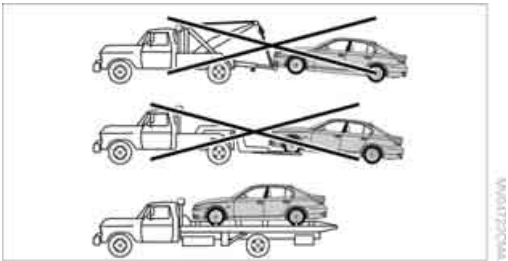
With tow rope

When starting off in the towing vehicle, make sure that the tow rope is taut.

⚠ To avoid jerking and the associated stresses on vehicle components when towing, always use nylon ropes or nylon straps. Only attach tow ropes to the tow fittings, as attachment to other vehicle parts can lead to damage.◀

With tow truck

⚠ Do not tow the vehicle with only the front or rear axle raised, as otherwise the engine may be damaged or the steering can turn to the left or right.◀



Have the vehicle transported on a flatbed surface only.

Tow-starting

Do not tow-start the vehicle if possible, but instead start the engine by means of jump starting, refer to page 224. With a catalytic converter, the vehicle should only be tow-started with the engine cold.

Manual transmission

1. Switch on the hazard warning flashers, comply with country-specific regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 56.
3. Shift into 3rd gear.
4. Tow-start with the clutch completely depressed and slowly release the clutch. After the engine starts, immediately depress the clutch again completely.

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

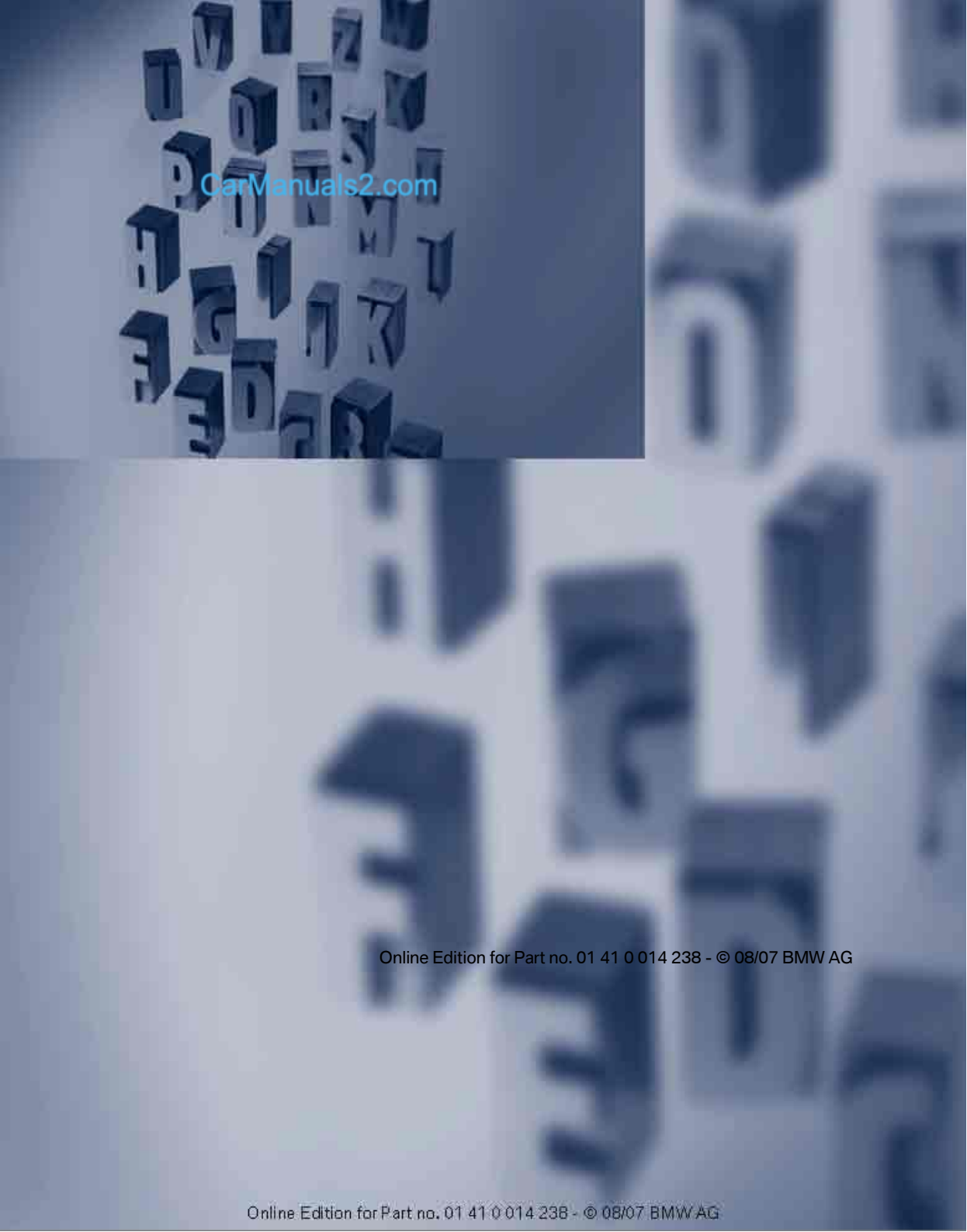
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope and switch off the hazard warning flashers.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic

CarManuals2.com

1. Switch on the hazard warning flashers, comply with country-specific regulations.
2. Switch on the ignition, refer to page 56.
3. Tow-start in selector lever position N.
4. Move the selector lever into the drive position and pull toward + within 2 seconds. The correct gear will be selected and engaged automatically.
5. Stop at a suitable location, remove the tow bar or rope and switch off the hazard warning flashers.
6. Have the vehicle checked.

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG



CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Reference

This chapter contains the technical data, the short commands of the voice command system, and the index that will direct you as quickly as possible to the information you are looking for.

CarManuals2.com

Technical data

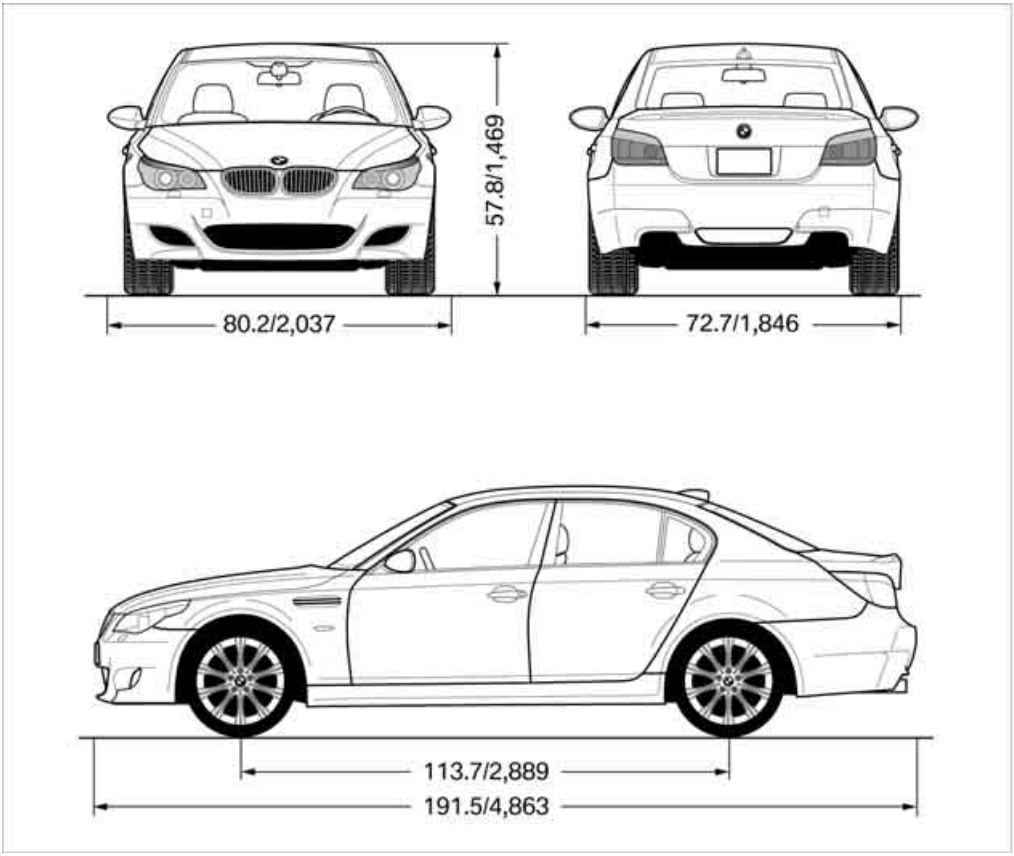
Engine data

		M5
Displacement	cu in/cm³	305.1/4,999
No. of cylinders		10
Maximum output	hp	500
at engine speed	rpm	7,750
Maximum torque	lb ft/Nm	383/520
at engine speed	rpm	6,100

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Dimensions



All dimensions given in inches/mm. Smallest turning circle diam.: 40.7 ft/12.4 m

CarManuals2.com

Weights

		M5
Curb weight	lbs./kg	4,012/1,820
Approved gross vehicle weight	lbs./kg	5,071/2,300
Load	lbs./kg	1,058/480
Approved front axle load	lbs./kg	2,403/1,090
Approved rear axle load	lbs./kg	2,800/1,270
Approved roof load capacity	lbs./kg	220/100
Cargo bay capacity	cu ft/l	17.7/500

CarManuals2.com

Never exceed either the approved axle loads or the gross vehicle weight.

Capacities

			Notes
Fuel tank	US gal/liters	approx. 18.5/70	Fuel grade: page 199
of that reserve	US gal/liters	approx. 4/15	
Window and headlamp washer system	US quarts/liters	approx. 5.3/5	For more details: page 63

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Short commands of voice command system*

With short commands you can run certain functions directly, regardless of which menu item is selected.

CarManuals2.com

Here are the important short commands for the voice command system.

Assistance window

Function	Command
To open the assistance window 20	›Assistance window‹
To select the display in the assistance window 20	›Assistance window map facing north‹, ›Assistance window map direction of travel‹, ›Assistance window arrow display‹, ›Assistance window perspective‹, ›Assistance window current position‹, ›Assistance window trip computer‹ or ›Assistance window onboard info‹
To change scale in assistance window 122	›Assistance window scale ... feet‹ or ›Assistance window scale ... miles‹

Communication

Function	Command
To open phone 175	›Phone‹
To dial phone number 181	›Dial number‹
To display phone book 182	›A to Z‹
To select from the phone book 182	›Call ...‹ or ›Dial name‹
To display "Top 8" 183	›Top 8‹
To redial 182	›Redial‹
To display "Received calls" 183	›Received calls‹
To display "Missed calls" 183	›Missed calls‹
To display "Bluetooth" 178	›Bluetooth‹
To open BMW Assist 190	›BMW Assist‹
To open BMW Service, Services 189	›BMW service‹
To open "BMW Contact" 183	›BMW Contact‹
To open "BMW Contact Numbers" 183	›BMW Contact numbers‹
To open "Roadside Assistance" 190	›Roadside Assistance‹

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Navigation

Function	Command
To open navigation system 122	›Navigation‹
To open "Enter address"	›Enter address‹
To open "New destination"	›New destination‹
To display "Input map"	›Input map‹
To display destination list	›Destination list‹
To display address book	›Address book‹
To display route criteria	›Route preference‹
To start destination guidance	›Start guidance‹
To end destination guidance	›Stop guidance‹
To display arrow display	›Arrow display‹
To display map display	›Map‹, ›Map facing north‹, ›Map direction of travel‹ or ›Perspective‹
To change scale	›Scale ... miles‹ or ›Scale ... feet‹
To display roads or towns/cities along route	›Route list‹
To switch on voice instructions	›Navigation info on‹
To switch off voice instructions	›Navigation info off‹
To repeat voice instructions	›Repeat navigation info‹
To open route	›Route menu‹
To open "New route"	›New route‹
To display current position	›Current position‹

Onboard info

Function	Command
To open "Car Data" 68	›Car data‹
To display computer 68	›Onboard info‹
To display trip computer 69	›Trip computer‹
To open stopwatch 74	›Stopwatch‹
To open speed limit 73	›Limit‹
To activate speed limit 74	›Limit on‹
To deactivate speed limit 74	›Limit off‹

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Entertainment

Function	Command
Tone control 149	›Audio‹
To switch on radio 152	›Radio on‹, ›FM‹ or ›AM‹
To open "FM" 152	›FM menu‹
To open "AM" 152	›AM menu‹
To open "All stations" 152	›FM all stations‹
To select radio station 152	›Station ...‹, e.g. ›Station WNYC‹, or ›Choose station‹
To open "Presets" 152	›FM presets‹ or ›AM presets‹
To select preset radio station 152	›Preset ...‹, e.g. ›Preset 1‹
To open "Manual" 153	›FM manual‹, ›AM manual‹ or ›Choose frequency‹, ›Frequency ... Megahertz‹
To open strongest radio stations 154	›AM Autostore‹
To open "WB" 156	›Weatherband menu‹
To switch on weatherband 156	›Weatherband on‹
To select a weatherband station 156	›Choose weatherband station‹
To open "SAT" 160	›SAT radio menu‹
To switch on satellite radio 160	›SAT radio‹
To open "Presets" of satellite radio 161	›SAT radio presets‹
To open "All channels" of satellite radio 160	›SAT radio all channels‹
To open "Categories" of satellite radio 160	›SAT radio categories‹
To open CD player 162	›CD menu‹
To switch on CD player 162	›CD‹
To open CD changer 163	›CD changer menu‹
To switch on CD changer 163	›CD changer‹
To select a CD in the CD changer 163	›CD 1...6‹
To select music track 163	›CD track ...‹
To select a CD and music track in the CD changer 163	›CD 1...6 track ...‹
To switch on audio playback with external audio device 168	›Audio Aux‹

CarManuals2.com

Climate

Function	Command
To adjust temperature distribution for front seat heating 47	›Seat heater distribution‹
To open "Vent settings" 99	›Vent settings‹
To open "Automatic programs" 98	›Automatic programs‹
To open "Parked car ventilation" 102	›Parked car operation‹
To open "Automatic ventilation" 102	›Automatic ventilation‹
To display activation times 102	›Activation time‹

i menu

Function	Command
To open the i menu	›Settings menu‹
"Display off" 21	›Display off‹
To open "Info sources"	›Info sources‹
To open "Settings"	›Settings‹
To open "Door locks" 30, 32	›Door locks‹
To open "Steering wheel buttons" 50	›Steering wheel buttons‹
To open MDrive* 50	›MDrive‹
To open "Lighting" 63	›Lighting‹
To open "Service requirements" 69, 191	›Service requirements‹
To open "Service" 69, 191	›Service‹
To open "BMW Service settings" settings 193	›BMW service settings‹
To display "Check Control messages" 72	›Check Control messages‹
To open "Head-Up Display" 89	›Head-up display‹
To set brightness of Control Display 76	›Brightness‹
To open "Units" 76	›Units‹
To open "Language" 77, 122	›Language‹
To open "Time" 75	›Time‹
To open "Date" 76	›Date‹
To open "PDC" 78	›PDC‹
To open "FTM" 83	›FTM‹
To open "TPM" 85	›TPM‹
To display "Bluetooth" 178	›Bluetooth‹

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Everything from A to Z

Index

CarManuals2.com

"..." Identifies Control Display texts used to select individual functions, and indicates where to find them in the text.

A

ABS Antilock Brake System 79
– indicator lamp 81
Accepted calls 182
Accessories 6
Accident, refer to Emergency request 223
Acoustic signal, refer to Check Control 71
Activated-charcoal filter for automatic climate control 101
"Activation time" for parked-car ventilation 102
Active front head restraints 44
Active seat ventilation 47
Adapter for spare key 28
Adaptive brake lamps, refer to Brake force display 87
Adaptive Head Light 94
"Add digits" for mobile phone 182
Additives
– coolant 211
– engine oil, refer to Approved engine oils 210
"Address book" for navigation system 131
Address for navigation
– deleting 133
– entering 124, 127
– selecting 132
– storing 131
– storing current position 132
"Add to address book" 131
"Add to destination list" 127, 128
Adjusting active backrest width 43
Adjusting interior temperature 98
Adjusting the tone during audio operation, refer to Tone control 149
Adjusting thigh support 42
"After door opened" 44
"After unlocking" 44
Airbags 87
– indicator/warning lamp 89
– indicator lamp for front passenger airbags 88
– sitting safely 41
Air distribution
– automatic 98
– manual 99
Airing, refer to Ventilation 101
Air recirculation
– AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 100
– recirculated-air mode 100
"Air recirculation on / off" 50
Air supply, automatic climate control 97
Air volume 99
AKI, refer to Fuel quality 199
Alarm system 35
– avoiding unintentional alarms 36
– interior motion sensor 35
– switching off alarm 35
– switching off tilt alarm sensor and interior motion sensor 36
– tilt alarm sensor 35
"All channels" 160
"All doors" 30
All-season tires, refer to Winter tires 204
"All stations", calling up with radio 152, 156
Alterations, technical, refer to For your own safety 5
Altering stretch of road 140
"AM", reception range 149, 152
Antenna, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Antenna for mobile phone 174
Antifreeze
– coolant 211
– washer fluid 64
Antilock Brake System ABS 79
Anti-theft alarm system, refer to Alarm system 35
Anti-theft system, refer to Central locking system 29
Approved axle loads, refer to Weights 232
Approved engine oils 210
Approved gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 232
Armrest, refer to Center armrest, rear 110
Around the center console 14
Around the steering wheel 10
Arrival time
– refer to Computer 68
– refer to Starting destination guidance 136
"Arrow display" for navigation system 137
"Arrow display pop-up instructions" 123
Ashtray
– front 108
– rear 109

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Assist, refer to
BMW Assist 189
Assistance systems, refer to
Driving stability control
systems 79
Assistance window 20
"Assist. window off" 21
AUC Automatic recirculated-
air control 100
"Audio" 149, 151, 156
Audio 148
– controls 148
– switching on/off 148
– tone control 149
– volume 149
Audio device, external 107
Automatic
– air distribution 98
– air volume 98
– headlamp control 92
– service notification 191
– steering wheel
adjustment 43
– storing stations 154
Automatic car washes 116
– also refer to Caring for your
vehicle brochure
Automatic climate control 97
– automatic air distribution 98
– parked car ventilation 101
– switching on and off 101
– ventilation in rear 101
Automatic closing of doors,
refer to Automatic soft
closing 33
Automatic curb monitor 48
Automatic lighting
– refer to Automatic headlamp
control 92
– refer to Daytime running
lamps 93
– refer to High-beam
assistant 94
– refer to Interior lamps 96
– refer to Pathway lighting 93
– refer to Welcome lamps 92
Automatic low beams, refer to
High-beam assistant 94
"Automatic programs" 98
Automatic soft closing 33
Automatic station search 153
"Automatic ventilation" 102
AUTO program for automatic
climate control 98
"Auto Request" 191
"Autostore" on the
radio 152, 154
"AUX" 149, 168, 170
AUX-In connection 168
"AUX IN" in audio mode 168
Average fuel consumption 68
– setting units 76
Average speed, refer to
Computer 67
"Avoid ferries" for navigation
system 134
"Avoid highways" for
navigation system 134
Avoiding freeways for
navigation 134
Avoiding unintentional
alarms 36
"Avoid tollroads" for
navigation system 134
Axle loads, refer to
Weights 232
"A - Z" 182

B

"Backrest" 51
Backrest contour, refer to
Lumbar support 42
Backrests, refer to Seats 42
Backrest width 42
Back seats, refer to Rear seats
Backup lamps, replacing
bulbs 216
"Balance", refer to Tone
control 150
Band-aids, refer to First-aid
kit 224
Bass, refer to Tone
control 149
"Bass", tone control 150
Battery, refer to Vehicle
battery 222
– jump starting 224
Battery replacement, remote
control for comfort
access 37
BC button, refer to
Computer 67
Being towed 225
Belts, refer to Safety belts 45
Beverage holder, refer to Cup
holders 108
Blind, refer to Sun blinds 105
Blower, refer to Air volume 99
"Bluetooth" 175
"BMW Assist" 190
BMW Assist 189
– activating 194
– concierge service 192
– contacting BMW Customer
Relations 192
– displaying vehicle data 195
– offered services 189
– roadside assistance 190
– TeleService 191
– updating 193
"BMW Contact" 184
"BMW Contact
Numbers" 184
BMW homepage 4
BMW maintenance
system 212
"BMW Service settings" 193
BMW website 4
Bottle holder, refer to Cup
holders 108
Bracket for telephone or
mobile phone, refer to Snap-
in adapter 188
Brake assistant 80
Brake force display 87
Brake lamps
– replacing bulbs 216
– two-stage 87
Brake rotors
– breaking-in 114
– refer to Braking safely 115

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Brakes
– ABS Antilock Brake System 79
– brake assistant 80
– brake force display 87
– breaking-in 114
– CBC Cornering Brake Control 79
– electronic brake-force distribution 79
– handbrake 58
– refer to Braking safely 115
– warning lamps 13
Brake system 114
– brake pads 114
– breaking-in 114
– disk brakes 115
– warning lamp 81
Braking safely 115
Breakdown, M Mobility System 217
Breakdown services, refer to Roadside Assistance 224
Breaking-in brake pads 114
Breaking-in the clutch 114
Breaking-in the differential, refer to Engine and differential 114
Break-in period 114
"Brightness" 76, 91
Brightness of Control Display 76
Button for starting engine, refer to Start/Stop button 56
Buttons on steering wheel 11

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 6
"Call" 182, 193
Call
– accepting 181
– displaying accepted 183
– ending 181
– in absence 183
– rejecting 181
– starting 181
Calling
– by entering phone number 181
– from phone book 182
– from Top 8 list 183
– redialing 183
Can holder, refer to Cup holders 108
Capacities 232
Car battery, refer to Vehicle battery 222
Car care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Car-care products, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
"Car Data" 68
Care 213
– refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Cargo
– refer to Cargo loading 116
– securing 117
– securing with ski bag 111
Cargo bay
– capacity 232
– emergency release 34
– opening/closing, refer to Luggage compartment lid 33
– opening from inside 33
– opening from outside 33
– opening with remote control 31
– socket 109
Caring for artificial leather, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for leather, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for light-alloy wheels, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for plastic, refer to the Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for the carpet, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Caring for the vehicle finish, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Car key, refer to Keys/remote control 28
Car phone 174
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 106
– refer to Mobile phone 174
– refer to separate operating instructions
Car radio, refer to Radio 152
Car wash 116
– also refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Catalytic converter, refer to Hot exhaust system 114
"Categories" 160
CBC Cornering Brake Control 79
CBS Condition Based Service 212
"CD" 149, 162
CD changer 162
– controls 148
– fast forward/reverse 166
– installation location 166
– random sequence 165
– repeating a track 165
– sampling tracks 164
– selecting a CD 163
– selecting a track 163
– switching on/off 148
– tone control 149
– volume 149
CD player 162
– controls 148
– fast forward/reverse 166
– random sequence 165
– repeating a track 165
– sampling a track 164
– selecting a track 163
– switching on/off 148
– tone control 149
– volume 149

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Center armrest
– front 106
– rear 110
Center brake lamp 216
Center console 14
"Central locking" 30
Central locking
– from inside 32
– from outside 30
Central locking system 29
– comfort access 36
Changes, technical
– refer to For your own safety 5
– refer to Parts and accessories 6
Changing language on Control Display 77
Changing scale for navigation 138
Changing units of measure on Control Display 76
Changing wheels 203, 219
CHECK button 72
Check Control 71
"Check Control messages" 73
Check Gas Cap 198
Checking the air pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure 200
Child restraint fixing system LATCH 54
Child restraint systems 53
Child-safety lock 55
Child seats, refer to Transporting children safely 53
Chime, refer to Check Control 71
Chock 220
Chrome parts, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Cigarette lighter 108
Cigarette lighter socket, refer to Connecting electrical devices 109
Cleaning, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
"Climate" 47, 98
Clock 67
– 12h/24h format 75
– hour signal 75
– setting time and date 75
Closing
– from inside 32
– from outside 30
Closing fuel filler cap 198
Clothes hooks 108
Cockpit 10
Cold start, refer to Starting engine 57
Comfort access 36
– replacing battery, remote control 37
Comfort area, refer to Around the center console 14
"Comfort" with EDC 82
"Communication" 180, 190
Compact Disc
– refer to CD changer 162
– refer to CD player 162
Compartment for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 56
Compartments, refer to Storage compartments 107
Compressed audio files 162
Computer 67
– clock 67
– displays on Control Display 68
– hour signal 75
"Concert hall", refer to Tone control 151
"Concierge" 192
Concierge service 192
Condensation, refer to When vehicle is parked 116
Condition Based Service CBS 212
"Confirmation" 31
Confirmation signals for locking and unlocking 31
Connecting car vacuum cleaner, refer to Connecting electrical devices 109
Consumption, refer to Average fuel consumption 68
Consumption statistics, refer to Average fuel consumption 68
"Continue guidance to destination?" 137
Control Center, refer to iDrive 16
Control Display, refer to iDrive 16
– setting brightness 76
– switching off/on 21
Controller, refer to iDrive 16
Controls, refer to Cockpit 10
Convenient operation
– glass sunroof 30
– windows 30
– windows and glass sunroof with comfort access 37
Coolant 211
– checking level 211
– temperature 66
Cooling, maximum 100
Cooling fluid, refer to Coolant 211
Cooling function, automatic climate control 100
Cooling system, refer to Coolant 211
Copyright 2
Cornering Brake Control CBC 79
Country of destination for navigation 125
Courtesy lamps 96
Cradle for telephone or mobile phone 106
Cruise control 65
Cruising range 68
Cup holders 108
Curb weight, refer to Weights 232

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

"Current position" 143
Current position
– displaying 143
– entering 132
– storing 132
"Customer Relations" 184, 192
Cylinders, refer to Engine data 230

D

Dashboard, refer to Cockpit 10
Data, technical 230
– dimensions 231
– engine 230
– weights 232
"Date" 76
Date
– date format 76
– setting 76
"Date format" 76
"Daytime running lamps" 93
Daytime running lamps 93
DBC Dynamic Brake Control, warning lamp 81
"Deactivated" 44
Decommissioning the vehicle, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Defect
– door lock 32
– fuel filler door 198
– glass sunroof 40
– luggage compartment lid 34
Defrosting windows 99
Defrosting windows and removing condensation 99
Defrosting windshield, refer to Defrosting windows 99
Defrost position, refer to Defrosting windows 99
"Delete address book" for navigation system 133
"Delete all numbers" for mobile phone 183
"Delete data" for navigation system 133
"Delete" for mobile phone 183
Destination address
– deleting 133
– entering 124, 127
Destination for navigation
– destination list 130
– entering via voice 127
– entry 124
– selecting from address book 132
– selecting using information 129
– storing 131
Destination guidance 136
– bypassing route sections 140
– canceling voice instructions 50
– changing specified route 134
– displaying route 137
– distance and arrival 136
– interrupting 136
– starting 136
– terminating/continuing 136
– voice instructions 139
– volume of voice instructions 140
Destination list for navigation 130
Destinations recently driven to 130
"Details" in audio mode 164, 170
"Dial" for mobile phone 181
"Dial number" 181
Digital clock 67
Digital radio, refer to High Definition Radio 156
Dimensions 231
Directional indicators, refer to Turn signals 62
Direction instructions, refer to Voice instructions 139
Directory, refer to Phone book 182
Directory for navigation, refer to Address book 131
Direct selection buttons 21
Displacement, refer to Engine data 230
"Display" 76
Display, refer to iDrive controls 16
Display elements, refer to Instrument cluster 12
Displaying vehicle data 195
Display lighting, refer to Instrument lighting 96
"Display off" 21
Displays
– on Control Display, refer to iDrive 16
– refer to Instrument cluster 12
"Display settings" 76, 89
Displays on the windshield, refer to Head-Up Display 89
Disposal
– battery of remote control with comfort access 37
– coolant 211
– vehicle battery 222
Distance, refer to Computer 68
"Distance to dest." 68
Distance to destination, refer to Computer 68
Distance warning, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 78
Divided rear backrest, refer to Through-loading system 110
Door entry lighting 96
Door key, refer to Keys/remote control 28
Door lock 32
Door locking, confirmation signals 31
"Door locks" 30

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Doors
– manual operation 32
– remote control 30
DOT Quality Grades 202
Draft-free ventilation 101
Drinks holder, refer to Cup holders 108
Drivelogic 61
Drive mode 60
"Driver's door only" 30
Driving lamps, refer to Parking lamps/low beams 92
Driving programs, refer to Drivelogic 61
Driving route, refer to Displaying route 137
Driving stability control systems 79
Driving through water 115
Driving tips, refer to General driving notes 114
Dry air, refer to Cooling function 100
Drying the air, refer to Cooling function 100
"DSC" 51, 80
DSC Dynamic Stability Control 80
– indicator lamp 13, 80
– malfunction 81
DVD for navigation 122
"Dynamic route" for navigation 134
Dynamic Stability Control DSC 80
– M Dynamic Mode MDM 80

E

Easy entry/exit 49
– backrest width 43
"EDC" 51
EDC Electronic Damping Control 82
– "Comfort" 82
– "Normal" 82
– "Sport" 82
Eject button, refer to Buttons in area of CD player 148
Electrical malfunction
– door lock 32
– driver's door 32
– fuel filler door 198
– glass sunroof, electric 40
– luggage compartment lid 34
Electric steering wheel adjustment 49
Electronic brake-force distribution 79
Electronic Damping Control EDC 82
Emergency operation, refer to Manual operation
– door lock 32
– driver's door 32
– fuel filler door 198
– luggage compartment lid 34
Emergency operation, refer to Moving manually
– glass sunroof 40
Emergency release for luggage compartment lid in cargo bay 34
Emergency request 223
Emergency services, refer to Roadside Assistance 224
"Enabled services" 195
"Enable services" 195
"End call" 182
Engaging drive position, refer to Selector lever positions 60
Engine
– breaking-in 114
– data 230
– M Engine Dynamic Control 59
– overheated, refer to Coolant temperature 66
– speed 230
– starting 57
– starting, with comfort access 36
– switching off 57
Engine compartment 207
Engine coolant 211
Engine oil
– adding 210
– additives, refer to Approved engine oils 210
– approved engine oil 210
– checking oil level 208
– fast measurement 209
– interval between changes, refer to Service requirements 69
– oil change 210
– oil grades, refer to Approved engine oils 210
– possible displays 208
– temperature 67
– temperature gauge 67
"Engine oil level" 209
Engine output, refer to Engine data 230
Engine overheating, refer to Coolant temperature 66
Engine speed, refer to Engine data 230
Engine starting, refer to Starting engine 57
"Enter address" 124, 131
Entering destination via town/city name 125
Entering intersection, navigation 126
Entering the address 124, 127
Entering town/city for navigation 125
Entering zip code for navigation 125
"Entertainment" 148
Entertainment sound output on/off 149
Entry map for destination 128
"Equalizer", refer to Tone control 151
Equalizer, refer to Tone control 151
"ESN" 159
ESP Electronic Stability Program, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 80

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Event Data Recorders 213
Exhaust system, refer to Hot exhaust system 114
Exterior mirrors 48
– adjusting 48
– automatic dimming feature 49
– automatic heating 48
– folding in and out 48
– tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror 48
External audio device 107
Eye for tow-starting and towing, refer to Tow fitting 225

F

"Fader", refer to Tone control 150
Fader, refer to Tone control 150
Failure messages, refer to Check Control 71
False alarm
– refer to Avoiding unintentional alarms 36
– refer to Switching off alarm 35
Fastening safety belts, refer to Safety belts 45
– warning lamp 46
Fastest route for navigation 134
"Fast route" for navigation 134
"Favorites", calling up with radio 156
Filler neck for washer fluid 64
Filling bottle, refer to M Mobility System 217
Filling sealant into wheel 218
Filter, refer to Microfilter/ activated-charcoal filter 101
Fine wood, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
First aid, refer to First-aid kit 224
First-aid kit 224
Flashing
– during locking/unlocking, refer to Setting confirmation signals 31
– triple turn signal activation 63
Flashlight, refer to Rechargeable flashlight 106
Flat tire
– changing wheels 219
– Flat Tire Monitor 83, 84
– M Mobility System 84, 217
– refer to Tire condition 202
– spare wheel 220
– TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 84
– warning lamp 84, 86
Flat Tire Monitor 83
– false alarms 83
– initializing system 83
– snow chains 204
– system limits 83
– warning lamp 84
Floor mat, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Floor mats/carpets, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Fluid reservoir, refer to Filler neck for washer fluid 64
"FM", reception range 149, 152
FM, waveband 152
Folding rear backrest 110
Fold-over rear backrest 110
Footbrake, refer to Braking safely 115
Footwell lamps, refer to Interior lamps 96
Forward, fast
– CD changer 166
– CD player 166
For your own safety 5
Freeway, refer to Route criteria 134
Front airbags 87
Front armrest, refer to Center armrest, front 106
Front passenger airbags, deactivating 88
Front seat adjustment 42
"FTM" 84
– FTM, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 83
Fuel 199
– average consumption 68
– display 67
– high-quality brands 199
– quality 199
– specifications 199
– tank contents, refer to Capacities 232
Fuel clock, refer to Fuel gauge 67
Fuel consumption display, refer to Computer, average fuel consumption 68
Fuel display, refer to Fuel gauge 67
Fuel filler door 198
– releasing in the event of electrical malfunction 198
Full mobile phone preparation package 174
Full screen display, refer to Switching assistance window off 21
Fuses 222

G

Garage door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 104
Gasoline, refer to Required fuel 199
Gasoline display, refer to Fuel gauge 67
Gear changes 61
Gear display, refer to Displays in instrument cluster 61
Gearshift lever 60
– manual transmission 58

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

General driving notes 114
Glass sunroof, electric 38
– convenient operation from outside 32
– convenient operation with comfort access 37
– moving manually 40
– remote control 30
Glove compartment 106
– lighting 106
– rechargeable flashlight 106
GPS navigation, refer to Navigation system 122
Grills, refer to Ventilation 101
Gross vehicle weight, refer to Weights 232
Ground clearance 116

H

Handbrake 58
– indicator lamp 13, 58
Hand lamp, refer to Rechargeable flashlight 106
Hands-free system, refer to Microphone 14
Hazard warning flashers 15
"HD radio" 156
HD radio, refer to High Definition Radio 156
Head airbags 87
Headlamp control, automatic 92
Headlamp flasher 62
Headlamps 92
– care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– cleaning, refer to Wiper system 63
– cleaning tank, refer to Capacities 232
– filler neck for washer fluid 207
Head Light, refer to Adaptive Head Light 94
Head restraints 44
– active front head restraints 44
– removing 45
– sitting safely 41
"Head-Up Display" 51, 89
Head-Up Display 89
– default view 90
– M view 89
– shift lights 62
Heated
– mirrors 48
– rear window 99
– seats 46
– steering wheel 49
Heating 97
– exterior mirrors 48
– interior 97
– rear window 99
– residual heat 100
– seats 46
– steering wheel 49
Heating with engine switched off, refer to Residual heat 100
Heavy cargo, refer to Securing cargo 117
Height, refer to Dimensions 231
Height adjustment
– seats 42
– steering wheel 49
"High-beam assistant" 96
High-beam assistant 94
High beams 94
– headlamp flasher 94
– indicator lamp 13
High Definition Radio 156
High water, refer to Driving through water 115
Hills 115
Holder for cups 108
"Home address" for navigation system 133
Homepage of BMW 4
Hood 206
Horn 10
Hot exhaust system 114
"Hour memo" 75
"House number" for destination entry 126
Hydraulic brake assistant, refer to Brake assistant 80
Hydroplaning 115

I

IBOC, refer to High Definition Radio 156
Ice, refer to Outside temperature warning 67
ID3 tag, refer to Information on track 164
Identification mark
– recommended tire brands 204
– tire coding 201
Idle 60
iDrive 16
– assistance window 20
– automatic climate control with expanded scope 98
– changing date and time 75
– changing language 77
– changing menu page 19
– changing settings 74
– changing units of measure and display type 76
– confirming selection or entry 19
– controller 16
– controls 16
– displays, menus 17
– operating principle 17
– selecting menu item 19
– setting brightness 76
– start menu 17
– status information 20
– symbols 18
Ignition 56
– switched off 57
– switched on 56
Ignition key, refer to Keys/remote control 28
Ignition key position 1, refer to Radio readiness 56

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Ignition key position 2, refer to Ignition on 56
Ignition lock 56
– starting engine with comfort access 37
i menu 17
Imprint 2
Indicator/warning lamps
– ABS Antilock Brake System 81
– airbags 89
– brake system 81
– DSC 13, 80
– Flat Tire Monitor 84
– high beams 13
– MDrive 13, 51
– M Dynamic Mode 13, 80
– parking lamps/low beams 13
– safety belt warning 46
– TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 86
Indicator and warning lamps, overview 13
Inflation pressure, refer to Tire inflation pressure 200
Inflation pressure monitoring
– refer to Flat Tire Monitor 83
– refer to TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 84
Info menu 17
Information
– on another location 129
– on current position 129
– on destination location 129
"Information" for navigation system 129
Information menu, refer to i menu 17
"Information on destination" 131
"Info sources" 70
Initializing
– Flat Tire Monitor 83
– radio, refer to Storing stations 154
– refer to Power failure 222
– refer to Setting time and date 75
– seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 43
"Input map" 129
Installation location
– CD changer 166
– drive for navigation DVD 122
– mobile phone 106
Instructions for navigation system, refer to Voice instructions 139
Instrument cluster 12
Instrument lighting 96
Instrument panel
– refer to Cockpit 10
– refer to Instrument cluster 12
Integrated key 28
Integrated universal remote control 104
Interesting destination for navigation 129
"Interim time" 74
Interior lamps 96
– switching on with remote control 31
Interior motion sensor 35
– switching off 36
Interior rearview mirror 49
– automatic dimming feature 49
Intermittent mode of the wipers 63

J

Jacking points 220
Joystick, refer to iDrive 16
Jumpering, refer to Jump starting 224
Jump starting 224

K

Keyless-Go, refer to Comfort access 36
Keyless opening and closing, refer to Comfort access 36
Key Memory, refer to Personal Profile 28
"Keypad" 184
Keys 28
– key-related settings, refer to Personal Profile 28
– spare key 28
Knock control 199

L

Lamps
– refer to High-beam assistant 94
– refer to Parking lamps/low beams 92
Lamps and bulbs 214
"Language / Units" 76, 77
– for navigation system 123, 139
"Languages" 77
– for navigation system 123, 139
Lashing eyes, refer to Securing cargo 117
Last destinations, refer to Destination list 130
"Last seat pos." 44
LATCH child restraint fixing system 54
LEDs light-emitting diodes 214
Length, refer to Dimensions 231
License plate lamp, replacing bulbs 217
Light-emitting diodes LEDs 214
Lighter 108
"Lighting" 63

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Lighting
– instruments 96
– lamps and bulbs 214
– of the vehicle, refer to Lamps 92
Light switch 92
"Limit" 73
Loading
– securing cargo 117
– stowing cargo 117
– vehicle 116
Load securing equipment, refer to Securing cargo 117
"Lock after driving" 33
Lock buttons in the doors, refer to Locking 33
Locking 30
– confirmation signals 31
– from inside 33
– from outside 30
– without key, refer to Comfort access 36
Locking and unlocking doors
– confirmation signals 31
– from inside 32
– from outside 30
Low beams 92
– automatic 92
– indicator lamp 13
Lower back support, refer to Lumbar support 42
Lug bolts 220
– tightening torque, refer to After mounting 221
– wrench 220
Luggage compartment lid 33
– comfort access 37
– emergency release 34
– locking with remote control 30
– opening from inside 33
– opening from outside 33
– opening with remote control 31
– unlocking and locking from inside 32
Luggage rack, refer to Roof-mounted luggage rack 118
Lumbar support 42
LW, waveband 152

M

CarManuals2.com

M Dynamic Mode MDM 80
– indicator lamp 13, 80
M Engine Dynamic Control 59
– "P 400" 59
– "P 500" 59
– "P 500 Sport" 59
M Mobility System 217
M+S tires, refer to Winter tires 204
Maintenance 212
– refer to Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models 212
– refer to Service requirements 69
– refer to Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models 212
Maintenance system 212
Malfunction warnings, refer to Check Control 71
Manual air distribution 99
"Manual" on the radio 153
Manual operation
– door lock 32
– driver's door 32
– fuel filler door 198
– glass sunroof 40
– luggage compartment lid 34
Manual transmission 58
– tow-starting 226
"Map direction of travel" 138
Map display 138
"Map facing north" 138
Map for navigation
– changing scale 138
– destination entry 128
Map view facing north 138
Master key, refer to Keys/ remote control 28
Maximum cooling 100
Maximum speed with winter tires 204
MDM, refer to M Dynamic Mode 80
MDrive 50
"M Dynamic Mode" 80
Measurements, refer to Dimensions 231
Memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 43
MENU, button refer to Start menu 17
Menus, refer to iDrive 16
Message list for traffic information 141
Microfilter 101
Microphone
– for telephone 14
– for voice command system 14
Mirror dimming feature 49
Mirrors 48
– automatic curb monitor 48
– folding in and out 48
– heating 48
– memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 43
"Missed calls" 182
Missed calls 183
Mobile phone
– accepted calls 183
– adjusting volume 180
– calling 181
– ending call 181
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 106
– missed calls 183
– operation by voice 185
– operation via iDrive 180
– redialing 183
– refer to separate operating instructions
– Top 8 183
– touch tone dialing, refer to Tone dialing method 184

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Mobile phone battery 188
Mobility System 217
Monitor, refer to iDrive 16
Monitoring pressure of tires, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 83
"Monitor on / off" 50
Most recent mobile phone numbers 183
MP3
– compressed audio files 162
– USB/audio interface 169
Multi-function steering wheel, refer to Buttons on steering wheel 11
Multifunction switch
– refer to Turn signals/ headlamp flasher 62
– refer to Wiper system 63
Music tracks
– finding 164
– random play sequence 165
– sampling, scan 164
"Mute on / off" 50
"M View" 90
"M view" 90
MW, waveband 152

N

"Navigation" 68, 124
Navigation destination
– entering manually 124
– home address 133
– selecting via map 128
Navigation drive, installation location 122
Navigation DVD 122
Navigation instructions, refer to Switching voice instructions on/off 139
Navigation system 122
– address book 131
– bypassing route sections 140
– destination entry 124
– destination guidance in assistance window 122
– destination list 130
– displaying current position 143
– displaying route 137
– entering a destination manually 124
– entering destination via voice 127
– last destinations 130
– navigation DVD 122
– route list 139
– searching for a special destination 129
– selecting destination using information 129
– selecting destination via map 128
– selecting route criteria 134
– starting destination guidance 136
– switching off, refer to Terminating/continuing destination guidance 136
– terminating/continuing destination guidance 136
– voice instructions 139
– volume adjustment 140
"Navigation voice instructions" 50, 139
Neck support, refer to Head restraints 44
"New address" for navigation system 131
"New destination" 124, 128
New remote control 28
"New route" 140
New wheels and tires 203
"Next entertainment source" 50
"Normal" with EDC 82
Nozzles, refer to Windshield washer nozzles 64
Nylon rope, refer to Tow-starting and towing 225

O

CarManuals2.com

OBD socket, refer to Socket for Onboard Diagnostics interface 213
Octane ratings, refer to Fuel specifications 199
Odometer 66
Oil, refer to Engine oil 208
Oil change intervals, refer to Service requirements 69
Oil temperature 67
"On a new destination" for navigation system 129
Onboard computer, refer to iDrive 16
"Onboard info" 68
Onboard toolkit 214
"On destination" 129
"On location" 129
Opening and closing
– comfort access 36
– from inside 32
– from outside 30
– using remote control 30
– using the door lock 32
Operating principle, iDrive 17
Operation by voice for mobile phone 185
– adjusting volume 186
– canceling 185
– commands 185
– correcting phone number 186
– dialing phone number 186
– placing a call 186
– redialing 187
– voice phone book 186
"Options" 193
Orientation menu, refer to Start menu 17
Output, refer to Engine data 230

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Outside air, refer to AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 100
Outside temperature display 67
– changing unit of measure 76
– in computer 76
Overview
– operating principle 17
– radio control 148
– screen display 20

P

"P 400" 59
"P 500" 59
"P 500 Sport" 59
Panic mode 31
Park Distance Control PDC 78
"Parked car operation" 102
"Parked car ventilation" 102
Parked car ventilation 101
– activating activation time 102
– LED 97
– preselecting activation times 102
– switching on and off directly 102
Parking, vehicle 57
Parking aid, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 78
Parking assistant, refer to PDC Park Distance Control 78
Parking brake, refer to Handbrake 58
Parking lamps 92
– indicator lamp 13
Parking lamps/low beams, indicator lamp 13
Parts and accessories 6
Passenger-side exterior mirror, tilting down 48
"Pathway lighting" 93
Pathway lighting 93
"PDC" 79
"PDC display on" 79
PDC Park Distance Control 78
Personal Profile 28
"Perspective" 138
"Phone" 176, 178, 181
Phone book 180
– changing entry 182
– creating and editing voice phone book 186
– deleting all entries 183
– deleting entry 183
– dialing phone number 182
Phone numbers
– deleting from phone book 183
– dialing 181
– most recent numbers 183
– selecting in phone book 183
– Top 8 183
Pinch protection system
– glass sunroof, electric 39
– power windows 38
Plasters, refer to First-aid kit 224
"Play" on the radio 160
Plug-in unit for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 56
Pollen, refer to Microfilter/ activated charcoal filter 101
Position
– refer to Displaying current position 143
– refer to Storing current position 132
"POWER" 51
POWER, refer to M Engine Dynamic Control 59
Power failure 222
Power windows, refer to Windows 37
Preselecting activation times of the parked car ventilation 102
"Presets" on the radio 152, 160
Pressure, tires 200
– producing with M Mobility System 217
Pressure monitoring of tires, refer to TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 84
"Profile" 195
Programmable button on steering wheel 50
Programmable memory buttons 21
Programming button function, refer to Programmable button on steering wheel 50
Protective function, refer to Pinch protection system
– glass sunroof, electric 39
– windows 38

R

Radio
– autostore 154
– controls 148
– High Definition Radio 156
– sampling stations 153
– satellite radio 159
– selecting frequency manually 153
– selecting waveband 148, 152
– station search 153
– station selection 152
– station with the best reception 154
– storing stations 154
– switching on/off 148
– tone control 149
– volume 149
– Weather Band, refer to Weather news flashes 156
Radio key, refer to Keys/ remote control 28
Radio position, refer to Radio readiness 56
Radio readiness 56
– switched off 57
– switched on 56
– with comfort access 37
Radio stations, storing 154
Rain sensor 63

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

"Random", random play sequence 165
"Random all" in audio mode 166
"Random directory" in audio mode 165
"RDS" 155
Reading lamps 96
Rear armrest, refer to Center armrest, rear 110
Rear lamps, refer to Tail lamps 216
– replacing bulbs 216
Rear seats
– adjusting head restraints 45
– folding over backrest 110
– heating 47
– removing head restraints 45
Rear socket 109
Rear ventilation 101
Rearview mirror 48
Rear window
– heating 99
– roller sun blind, refer to Sun blinds 105
Rear window safety switch 38
"Received calls" 182
Reception
– quality 155
– radio stations 155
– regional station 154
Reception level of mobile phone, refer to Status information 20
Rechargeable flashlight 106
Recirculated-air mode 100
– air recirculation 100
– AUC Automatic recirculated-air control 100
Reclining seat, refer to Seats 42
Recording times, refer to Stopwatch 74
"Redial" for mobile phone 182
Redialing with mobile phone 187
Reflectors, refer to Tail lamps 216
Refueling 198
Releasing
– hood 206
– locks, refer to Unlocking 36
"Relock door if not opened" 32
Remaining distance, refer to Cruising range 68
Remaining distance to destination, refer to Computer 68
Remote control 28
– comfort access 36
– garage door opener 104
– luggage compartment lid 31
– malfunction 31, 37
– replacing battery 37
Removing condensation on the windows 99
"Repeat directory" in audio mode 165
"Repeat" in audio mode 165
"Repeat track" in audio mode 165
Replacement fuses 222
Replacement of tires, refer to Changing wheels 219
Replacement remote control, refer to New remote controls 28
Replacing bulbs, refer to Lamps and bulbs 214
Replacing tires 203
Replacing wheels/tires, refer to New wheels and tires 203
Reporting safety defects 7
Reserve warning, refer to Fuel gauge 67
"Reset" 84, 85
– stopwatch 74
– tone settings 151
Reset, refer to Resetting tone settings 151
"resetting FTM ..." 84
"Reset to default" with MDrive 51
Residual heat 100
Restraint systems
– for children 53
– refer to Safety belts 45
Retreaded tires 203
Reverse, fast
– CD changer 166
– CD player 166
Reverse gear 60
– manual transmission 58
Road map 138
"Roadside Assistance" 184, 190
Roadside Assistance 224
Roadside assistance 190
Roadside parking lamps 94
Roof load capacity 232
Roof-mounted luggage rack 118
Rope, refer to Tow-starting and towing 225
Rotary/pushbutton, refer to iDrive 16
Route 134
– bypassing sections 140
– changing 140
– changing criteria 134
– displaying 137
– displaying arrow display 137
– displaying map view 138
– displaying streets or towns/cities 139
– selecting 134
Route information, refer to Destination guidance with voice instructions 139
Route map, refer to Displaying map view 138
"Route preference", changing 134
Route selection 134
Rubber parts, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

S

Safety 5
Safety belts 45
– damage 46
– refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– sitting safely 41
– warning lamp 46
Safety belt tensioners
– refer to Airbags 87
– refer to Safety belts 45
Safety systems
– ABS Antilock Brake System 79
– airbags 87
– driving stability control systems 79
– safety belts 45
Satellite radio 159
– enabling channel 159
– selecting channel 160
– storing channel 160
"SAT" with radio 149, 159
"Save current destination" 133
"Scan"
– music tracks on CD 164
– stations with radio 153
Scan
– CD changer 164
– CD player 164
– radio 153
"Scan all" in audio mode 164
"Scan directory" in audio mode 164
Screen, refer to iDrive 16
Screw thread for tow fitting 225
SDARS, refer to Satellite radio 159
"Seat heater distribution" 47
Seats 42
– active backrest width adjustment 43
– adjusting backrest width 42
– adjusting height 42
– adjusting shoulder support 42
– adjusting the seats 42
– adjusting thigh support 42
– easy entry/exit 43
– heating 46
– lumbar support 42
– memory, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 43
– shoulder support 42
– sitting safely 41
– storing the setting 43
– ventilation, refer to Active seat ventilation 47
Securing load
– refer to Securing cargo 117
– with ski bag, refer to Securing cargo 111
"Select as destination" 130, 193
"Select current speed" 74
Selecting audio sources, refer to Operation via iDrive 148
Selecting frequency manually 153
Selecting menu items 19
Selecting route 134
Selection options with navigation system 134
Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic 59
– Drivelogic driving programs 61
– idle 60
– initializing system, refer to After changing wheels/tires 204
– reverse gear 60
– Sequential mode 60
– shift lights 62
– shiftlock 60
– towing 226
– tow-starting 227
Sequential mode 60
Service, refer to Roadside Assistance 224
Service and Warranty Information Booklet for US models 212
"Service Info" 70, 191, 209
Service Interval Display
– refer to CBS Condition Based Service 212
– refer to Service requirements 69
"Service Request" 184, 191
"Service requirements" 70, 191, 209
Service requirements 69
– refer to CBS Condition Based Service 212
"Set"
– in audio mode 149
– on trip computer 69
"Set date" 76
"Set service date" 71
"Set time" 75
Setting button, refer to Controls, controller 16
"Settings" 195
– for BMW Assist 193
– for MDrive 51
– for unlocking 30

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Settings
– changing on Control Display 74
– clock, 12h/24h mode 75
– configuring, refer to MDrive 50
– configuring, refer to Personal Profile 28
– date 76
– language 77
– units of measure 76
Settings menu, refer to i menu 17
Setting time, refer to Preselecting activation times 102
Shifting 61
Shifting into drive position, refer to Selector lever positions 60
Shift lights 62
Shiftlock 60
Shift paddles on steering wheel 61
Shock absorber control, refer to EDC Electronic Damping Control 82
Short commands of voice command system 233
"Short route" for navigation 134
Short route in navigation, refer to Selecting route 134
Shoulder support 42
"Show current position" 129
"Show destination position" 129
Shuffled, refer to Random
– CD changer 165
– CD player 165
Side airbags 87
Side marker lamps, replacing bulbs 216
Side-mounted turn signals, replacing bulbs 216
Side window blinds, refer to Sun blinds 105
Signal horn, refer to Horn 10
Sitting safely 41
– with airbags 41
– with head restraint 41
– with safety belts 41
Ski bag 110
Sliding/tilt sunroof, refer to Glass sunroof, electric 38
Slope assistant, refer to Starting assistant 82
SMG, refer to Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic 59
"SMG Drivelogic" 51, 62
Snap-in adapter
– mounting/removing 188
– using 174
Snow chains 204
Socket for Onboard Diagnostics interface 213
Socket for remote control, refer to Ignition lock 56
Sockets, refer to Connecting electrical devices 109
Soft closure aid, refer to Automatic soft closing 33
Song search on CD, refer to Sampling tracks 164
SOS, refer to Initiating an emergency request 223
Sound distribution in audio mode
– front/rear fader 150
– right/left balance 150
Spare
– adapter for spare key 28
– fuses 222
– key 28
– wheel, driving with spare wheel 221
– wheel, refer to Changing wheels 219
Special oils, refer to Approved engine oils 210
Specified oil grades, refer to Approved engine oils 210
Speed-dependent volume 150
Speed limit 73
Speed limit warning, refer to Speed limit 73
Speedometer 12
"Speed volume", tone control 150
Speed with winter tires 204
"Sport" with EDC 82
Stability control, refer to Driving stability control systems 79
Start/Stop button 56
– starting the engine 57
– switching off the engine 57
"Start" for stopwatch 74
"Start guidance" 127, 136
Starting, refer to Starting engine 57
Starting assistance, refer to Jump starting 224
Starting assistant 82
Starting difficulties, refer to Jump starting 224
Starting off
– on a slippery surface 82
– on slopes, refer to Starting assistant 82
Start menu, iDrive 17
"Start route guidance" 129
"Start service" 191
"Start Service" for BMW Assist 192
"State / Province" for destination entry 125
"State inspection" 71
Station, refer to Radio 152
"Status" 70
Status information on Control Display 20
Status of this Owner's Manual at time of printing 5

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Steering wheel
– adjustment 49
– automatic adjustment, refer to Steering wheel memory 43
– buttons on steering wheel 11
– easy entry/exit 49
– heating 49
– lock, refer to Ignition lock 56
– MDrive button 50
– memory 43
– programmable button 50
– shift paddles 61
"Steering wheel button" 50
Steering-wheel shift buttons, refer to Shift paddles 61
"Stop" for stopwatch 74
"Stopwatch" 74
Stopwatch 74
Storage compartments 107
"Store in address book" for navigation system 132
"Store" on the radio 155, 161
Storing current position 132
Storing radio stations 154
Storing sitting position, refer to Seat, mirror and steering wheel memory 43
Storing tires 204
"Street" for destination entry 126
Summer tires, refer to Wheels and tires 200
Sun blinds 105
"Surround Settings", refer to Tone control 150, 151
SW, waveband 152
Switches, refer to Cockpit 10
Switching automatically between high beams and low beams, refer to High-beam assistant 94
Switching off engine 57
Switching on
– audio 148
– CD changer 148
– CD player 148
– radio 148
Switching on hour signal 75
Swiveling headlamps, refer to Adaptive Head Light 94
Symbols 4
– indicator/warning lamps 13
– navigation system 142
– status information 20
– traffic information with navigation system 140

T

Tachometer 66
Tail lamps 216
– replacing bulbs 216
Tank contents, refer to Capacities 232
Target cursor for navigation 129
Technical alterations, refer to For your own safety 5
Technical data 230
– capacities 232
– dimensions 231
Telematics, refer to BMW Assist 189
Telephone
– installation location, refer to Center armrest 106
– refer to Mobile phone 174
"Telephone list" 50
TeleService 191
Temperature
– adjusting in upper body region 98
– adjusting with automatic climate control 98
– changing units of measure 76
– refer to Coolant temperature 66
Temperature display
– changing units of measure 76
– outside temperature 66
– outside temperature warning 67
Temperature gauge, engine oil 67
Tempomat, refer to Cruise control 65
"Terminate services" 194
"Text language" 77
"Theater", refer to Tone control 151
The individual vehicle 5
Third brake lamp, refer to Center brake lamp 216
Through-loading system 110
Tightening torque of the lug bolts, refer to After mounting 221
Tilt alarm sensor 35
– switching off 36
Tilting down passenger-side exterior mirror 48
"Time" 75
"Time format" 75
Timer, refer to Preselecting activation times 102
"Timer 1" for parked-car ventilation 102
"Timer 2" for parked-car ventilation 102
Tire inflation pressures 200
Tire pressure loss 84, 85
Tire Pressure Monitor TPM 84
Tire Quality Grading 201
Tire replacement, new wheels and tires 203

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Tires
– age 201
– air loss 84, 86
– breaking-in 114
– changing 203
– condition 202
– damage 203
– flat tire, refer to Changing wheels 219
– inflation pressure 200
– M Mobility System 217
– new wheels and tires 203
– pressure monitoring, refer to Flat Tire Monitor 83
– pressure monitoring, refer to TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 84
– replacing 219
– retreaded tires 203
– size 201
– tread 202
– wear indicators 202
– wheel/tire combination 203
– winter tires 204
Tire trouble, changing wheels 219
TMC station, refer to Traffic information 140
"Tone" 149
Tone dialing method 184
Tone in audio mode
– adjusting 149
– middle setting 151
Tone on locking/unlocking 31
Tools, refer to Onboard toolkit 214
"Top 8" for mobile phone 182
Torque
– lug bolts, refer to After mounting 221
– refer to Engine data 230
Touch tone dialing, refer to Tone dialing method 184
Tow bar 226
Tow fitting 225
Towing 225
– methods 226
– tow fittings 225
– with manual transmission 226
– with Sequential Manual Transmission 226
– with Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic 226
"Town / City" for destination entry 125
Tow rope 226
Tow-starting 225
"TPM" 85
TPM Tire Pressure Monitor 84
– resetting system 85
– system limits 85
– warning lamp 86
Tracks
– random sequence 165
– sampling on CD 164
– selecting with CD 163
Track width, refer to Dimensions 231
Traction control, refer to DSC Dynamic Stability Control 80
Traffic information for navigation 140
– depiction in route map 142
– displaying 141
– during destination guidance 143
– symbols 142
"Traffic Info settings" 141
Traffic jam
– displaying traffic information 140
– refer to Bypassing route sections 140
Transmission
– breaking-in 114
– Drivelogic 61
– idle 60
– manual transmission 58
– reverse gear 60
– Sequential Manual Transmission with Drivelogic 59
– shift lights 62
– starting assistant 82
– towing 225
– tow-starting 226
Transporting children safely 53
Transport securing device, refer to Securing cargo 117
Tread depth, refer to Minimum tire tread 202
Treble, refer to Tone control 149
"Treble", tone control 150
"Trip computer" 69
Trip computer 69
Trip-distance counter
– refer to Trip computer 69
– refer to Trip meter 66
"Triple turn signal" 63
Trip meter, also refer to Trip computer 69
Trip odometer 66
Trunk, refer to Cargo bay
Turning circle, refer to Dimensions 231
Turning lamps 94
– replacing bulbs 215
Turn signals 62
– indicator lamp 12
– replacing bulbs 216

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

U

"Unchanged" 51, 62
Underbody protection, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Uniform Tire Quality Grading/ UTQR 201
"Units" 76
Units
– average fuel consumption 76
– temperature 76
Universal garage-door opener, refer to Integrated universal remote control 104
Universal remote control 104
"Unlock button" 30
Unlocking
– from inside 33
– from outside 30
– without key, refer to Comfort access 36
"Update services" 193
Upshift display, refer to Shift lights 62
USB/audio interface 169
"USB" in audio mode 170
"Use current location as address" 132, 133
Used batteries
– refer to Disposal 222
– refer to Replacing battery 37
Using turn signals 62

V

Valve screw caps, refer to After mounting 221
Vehicle
– battery 222
– breaking-in 114
– care 213
– care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– loading 116
– measurements, refer to Dimensions 231
– parking 57
– washing, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– weights 232
"Vehicle / Tires" for unlocking 30
Vehicle jack 220
– jacking points 220
Vehicle position, refer to Displaying current position 143
Ventilation 101
– draft-free 101
– in rear 101
– while stationary 101
Vent outlets 97
– automatic climate control 97
– refer to Ventilation 101
"Vent settings" 99
Viscosity 210
Voice, refer to Destination guidance with voice instructions 139
Voice command system
– overview 23
– short commands 233
Voice instructions for navigation system 139
– muting 50
– repeating 50, 140
– switching on/off 50, 139
– volume 140
Voice phone book 186
Volume 148
– audio sources 148
– cargo bay 232
– fuel tank, refer to Capacities 232
– mobile phone 180
– setting speed-dependent 150
– voice instructions 140
– windshield cleaning system, refer to Capacities 232

W

Warning lamps, refer to Indicator and warning lamps 13
Warning messages, refer to Check Control 71
Warning triangle 223
Warranty and Service Guide Booklet for Canadian models 212
Washer fluid 64
– capacity of the reservoir 64
Washing the vehicle, also refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Waste container, refer to Ashtray 108
Water on roads, refer to Driving through water 115
Waveband for radio 152
"WB" 149, 156
Wear indicators in tires, refer to Minimum tread depth 202
Weather news flashes 156
Website BMW 4
Weights 232
Welcome lamps 92
"Welcome light" 93
Wheel/tire combination, refer to New wheels and tires 203
Wheel/tire damage 203
Wheelbase, refer to Dimensions 231
Wheels and tires 200

CarManuals2.com

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

Width, refer to
Dimensions 231
Windows 37
– convenient operation 30
– convenient operation from outside 32
– convenient operation with comfort access 37
– safety switch 38
Windshield
– cleaning, refer to Wiper system 63
– defrosting, refer to Defrosting windows 99
– displays, refer to Head-Up Display 89
Windshield wash
– automatic, refer to Rain sensor 63
– capacities, reservoir 232
– filler neck for washer fluid 207
– washer fluid 64
– windshield washer nozzles 64
– wiper system 63
Windshield wipers, refer to Wiper system 63
– care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– wiper blade replacement 214
Winter tires 204
– setting speed limit 73
– storage 204
Wiper blades
– care, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
– replacement 214
Wiper system 63
– rain sensor 63
– washer fluid 64
– windshield washer nozzles 64
"With highways" for navigation system 134
Wood decoration, refer to Caring for your vehicle brochure
Word matching principle for navigation 135
Working in the engine compartment 206
Wrenches/screwdrivers, refer to Onboard toolkit 214

CarManuals2.com

X

Xenon lamps 215
– replacing bulbs 215

Y

Your individual vehicle
– programmable button on steering wheel 50
– settings, refer to MDrive 50
– settings, refer to Personal Profile 28

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG

CarManuals2.com

More about BMW

bmwusa.com

The Ultimate
Driving Machine

CarManuals2.com

01 41 0 014 238 ue

Online Edition for Part no. 01 41 0 014 238 - © 08/07 BMW AG